## Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete

Band 69

Herausgegeben von P. R. Halmos · P. J. Hilton R. Remmert · B. Szőkefalvi-Nagy

Unter Mitwirkung von L. V. Ahlfors · R. Baer F. L. Bauer · A. Dold · J. L. Doob S. Eilenberg · M. Kneser · G. H. Müller M. M. Postnikov · B. Segre · E. Sperner

Geschäftsführender Herausgeber: P. J. Hilton

# Introduction to Piecewise-Linear Topology

With 58 Figures



Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg New York 1972

Colin P. Rourke · Brian J. Sanderson The University of Warwick, England

AMS Subject Classifications (1970):

Primary 57 A XX, 57 C XX, 57 D XX Secondary 50 XX, 52 XX, 53 XX, 54 XX, 55 XX, 57 XX, 58 XX

#### ISBN 3-540-05800-1 Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg New York ISBN 0-387-05800-1 Springer-Verlag New York Heidelberg Berlin

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically those of translation, reprinting, re-use of illustrations, broadcasting, reproduction by photocopying machine or similar means, and storage in data banks. Under § 54 of the German Copyright Law where copies are made for other than private use, a fee is payable to the publisher, the amount of the fee to be determined by agreement with the publisher. © by Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 1972. Library of Congress Catalog Card Number 72-85229. Printed in Germany. Printing and binding: Universitätsdruckerei H. Stürtz AG, Würzburg.

## Preface

The first five chapters of this book form an introductory course in piecewise-linear topology in which no assumptions are made other than basic topological notions. This course would be suitable as a second course in topology with a geometric flavour, to follow a first course in point-set topology, and perhaps to be given as a final year undergraduate course.

The whole book gives an account of handle theory in a piecewiselinear setting and could be the basis of a first year postgraduate lecture or reading course. Some results from algebraic topology are needed for handle theory and these are collected in an appendix. In a second appendix are listed the properties of Whitehead torsion which are used in the *s*-cobordism theorem. These appendices should enable a reader with only basic knowledge to complete the book.

The book is also intended to form an introduction to modern geometric topology as a research subject, a bibliography of research papers being included.

We have omitted acknowledgements and references from the main text and have collected these in a set of "historical notes" to be found after the appendices.

We are planning eventually to write a further book which will include the topics of embedded handle theory, normal bundles, transversality and p.l. bordism and cobordism theory. For present reading on these topics, see the bibliography.

## Table of Contents

Chapter 1. Polyhedra and P.L. Maps	1
Basic Notation	1
Joins and Cones	1
Polyhedra	2
Piecewise-Linear Maps	5
The Standard Mistake	6
P.L. Embeddings	7
Manifolds	7
Balls and Spheres	8
The Poincaré Conjecture and the h-Cobordism Theorem	8
Chapter 2. Complexes	11
Simplexes	11
Cells	13
Cell Complexes	14
Subdivisions	15
Simplicial Complexes	16
Simplicial Maps	16
Triangulations	17
Subdividing Diagrams of Maps	18
Derived Subdivisions	20
Abstract Isomorphism of Cell Complexes	20
Pseudo-Radial Projection	20
External Joins	22
Collars	24
Appendix to Chapter 2. On Convex Cells	27
Chapter 3. Regular Neighbourhoods	31
Full Subcomplexes	31
Derived Neighbourhoods	32
Regular Neighbourhoods	33

Regular Neighbourhoods in Manifolds	•	•	•	34 37
Collapsing				39
Remarks on Simple Homotopy Type				39
Shelling				40
Orientation				43
Connected Sums				46
Schönflies Conjecture				47
	•	•	•	• *
Chapter 4. Pairs of Polyhedra and Isotopies		•	•	50
Links and Stars				50
Collars				52
Regular Neighbourhoods				52
Simplicial Neighbourhood Theorem for Pairs				53
Collapsing and Shelling for Pairs				54
Application to Cellular Moves				54
Disc Theorem for Pairs			·	56
Isotony Extension	•	•	•	56
Chapter 5 Coneral Desition and Applications	·	·	•	60
Chapter 5. General Fosition and Applications	•	·	·	00
General Position	•	•	·	60
Embedding and Unknotting		•	•	63
Piping	•	•		67
Whitney Lemma and Unlinking Spheres				68
Non-Simply-Connected Whitney Lemma				72
Chapter 6. Handle Theory				74
Handles on a Cobordism				75
Reordering Handles	•	·	•	76
Handles of Adjacent Index	·	•	•	76
Complementary Handles	•	·	·	78
Adding Handles	·	·	·	/0
	•	·	·	00
Handle Decompositions.	·	·	·	81
The CW Complex Associated with a Decomposition	•	·	·	83
The Duality Theorems	·	·	·	84
Simplifying Handle Decompositions	•	•	•	84
Proof of the $h$ -Cobordism Theorem $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $\ldots$	·	·	•	87
The Relative Case			•	87
The Non-Simply-Connected Case				88
Constructing h-Cobordisms	•			90
Chapter 7. Applications				91
Unknotting Balls and Spheres in Codimension $\geq 3$				91
A Criterion for Unknotting in Codimension 2				92

Weak	5-Dimensional Theorems	3
Engu	lfing	4
Embe	edding Manifolds	5
Appendi	x A. Algebraic Results	7
A. 1	Homology	7
A. 2	Geometric Interpretation of Homology	3
A. 3	Homology Groups of Spheres	9
A. 4	Cohomology	)
A. 5	Coefficients	)
A. 6	Homotopy Groups	)
A. 7	CW Complexes	I
A. 8	The Universal Cover	2
Appendix	<b>K B. Torsion</b>	1
B. 1	Geometrical Definition of Torsion	1
B. 2	Geometrical Properties of Torsion	1
B. 3	Algebraic Definition of Torsion	5
B. 4	Torsion and Polyhedra	5
B. 5	Torsion and Homotopy Equivalences	7
Historica	$I \text{ Notes } \dots $	5
Bibliogra	phy	2
Index .		)

## Chapter 1. Polyhedra and P.L. Maps

In this chapter we introduce the main objects of study, polyhedra and p.l. maps. The chapter consists mostly of definitions, examples, and exercises. In a final section we introduce the main results of the book: the Poincaré conjecture and the h-cobordism theorem. This section may be omitted until after Chapter 5 if the reader wishes; we have included it here to give a taste of deeper results.

## **Basic Notation**

A map is a continuous function. cl(X) denotes the closure of X.  $\mathbb{R}$  denotes the real numbers and  $\mathbb{R}^n$  (Euclidean *n*-space) the space of *n*-vectors  $\{x = (x_1, x_2, ..., x_n)\}$  of real numbers. We will use the product metric on  $\mathbb{R}^n$  given by  $d(x, y) = \sup |x_i - y_i|$ . "Linear" always means linear in the affine sense; thus a *linear subspace* (or just subspace)  $V \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is a translated vector subspace, or equivalently: for each finite set  $\{a_i\} \subset V$  and real numbers  $\lambda_i$  with  $\sum \lambda_i = 1$  we have  $\sum \lambda_i a_i \in V$ . A map  $f: V \to \mathbb{R}^m$  is *linear* if  $f(\sum \lambda_i a_i) = \sum \lambda_i f(a_i)$ .

#### Joins and Cones

Let  $A, B \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be subsets. Define their join AB to be the subset  $AB = \{\lambda a + \mu b | a \in A, b \in B\}$  where  $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R}, \lambda, \mu \ge 0$  and  $\lambda + \mu = 1$ . Then AB consists of all points on straight-line segments "arcs" with endpoints in each of A and B. If  $A = \emptyset$  we define AB = B.



If  $A = \{a\}$  is a one-point set then we often abbreviate  $\{a\}$  to a. We say that aB is a cone with vertex a and base B (or simply that aB is a cone) if each point is expressed uniquely as  $\lambda a + \mu b$  with  $b \in B$ ,  $\lambda, \mu \ge 0$  and  $\lambda + \mu = 1$ . Equivalently  $a \notin B$  and the arcs  $ab_1$  and  $ab_2$ , for each pair of distinct points  $b_1, b_2 \in B$ , meet only at a.

Example



Fig. 2

 $aB_1$  is a cone while  $aB_2$  is not. The example makes it clear that the property of being a cone depends on the presentation of the set aB.

## Polyhedra

1.1 A subset  $P \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  is a polyhedron if each point  $a \in P$  has a cone neighbourhood N = aL in P, where L is compact; N is called a *star* of a in P and L a link and we write  $N = N_a(P)$ ,  $L = L_a(P)$ . Note that the case  $L = \emptyset$  is not excluded so that a point is a polyhedron.

Examples of Polyhedra



Fig. 3. A house with 2 rooms, each having one entrance



Fig. 4. A pyramid with a flag sitting on an infinite plane

Examples of Non-Polyhedra





X = an open disc with a tail

In the first example a has no cone neighbourhood in C. In the second example a has a cone neighbourhood  $aL \subset X$  but L is non-compact. However X - a is a polyhedron! More examples are given in 1.3, below.

**1.2** Remark. In 1.1 we could take N to be the  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood  $N_{\varepsilon}(a, P) = \{x | x \in P, d(a, x) \leq \varepsilon\}$  and L to be  $\dot{N}(a, P) = \{x | x \in P, d(a, x) = \varepsilon\}$  for some suitably small  $\varepsilon > 0$ . For given any cone neighbourhood N = aL of a in P, use compactness of L to find an  $\varepsilon > 0$  such that  $d(a, L) \geq \varepsilon$  then it is easy to see that  $N_{\varepsilon}(a, P) = a \dot{N}_{\varepsilon}(a, P)$  is a cone.



Fig. 6

#### **1.3** Examples and exercises

(1)  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is a polyhedron. The subset  $\mathbb{R}^n_+ \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , defined by  $x_n \ge 0$ , is a polyhedron. Subspaces of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  are polyhedra.

(2) An open subset of a polyhedron is a polyhedron.

(3) The intersection of finitely many polyhedra is a polyhedron. (Use 1.2.)

(4) Let  $P_1, P_2 \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^m$  be polyhedra and identify  $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^m$  with  $\mathbb{R}^{n+m}$  by  $(x, y) \mapsto (x_1, \dots, x_n, y_1, \dots, y_m)$  then  $P_1 \times P_2 \subset \mathbb{R}^{n+m}$  is a polyhedron. For if  $a_1 L_1, a_2 L_2$  are cone  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhoods then so is  $a_1 L_1 \times a_2 L_2$ .

(5) Let  $P = \bigcup P_{\alpha}$  where  $P_{\alpha} \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  are compact polyhedra and the union is *locally finite* in the sense that each point  $p \in P$  has a neighbourhood meeting only finitely many of the  $P_{\alpha}$ . Then P is a polyhedron. (Use 1.2.)

(6) Cubes. Let  $a = (a_1, ..., a_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ . Then  $N_{\varepsilon}(a, \mathbb{R}^n) = [a_1 - \varepsilon, a_1 + \varepsilon] \times \cdots \times [a_n - \varepsilon, a_n + \varepsilon]$  is a polyhedron by (4), called a "cube". A face of  $N_{\varepsilon}(a, \mathbb{R}^n)$  is obtained by replacing each factor  $[a_i - \varepsilon, a_i + \varepsilon]$  either by itself or by  $\{a_i - \varepsilon\}$  or  $\{a_i + \varepsilon\}$ , and then the faces are also polyhedra by (4) and hence  $\dot{N}_{\varepsilon}(a, \mathbb{R}^n)$  which is the union of the proper faces (i.e. the faces not equal to the cube) is a polyhedron by (5).

We write  $I^n$  for the unit *n*-cube  $[-1, 1]^n = N_1(0, \mathbb{R}^n)$  and  $\dot{I}^n = \dot{N}_1(0, \mathbb{R}^n)$  for its boundary.  $I^1 = [-1, 1] \subset \mathbb{R}$  should not be confused with the unit interval  $I = [0, 1] \subset \mathbb{R}$ .

(7) A cone aP on a compact polyhedron P is itself a compact polyhedron. For let  $x \in aP$ , then if x = a we can take  $N_x(aP) = aP$  and if  $x \neq a$  we can take  $N_x(aP) = aN_y(P)$  where  $x = \lambda a + \mu y$ ,  $y \in P$ ; since we have  $aN_y(P) = x(N_y(P) \cup aL_y(P))$  when  $x \neq y$ , and  $aN_y(P) = y(aL_y(P))$  when x = y. See Fig. 7.

(8) Suppose  $P \subset V$  is a polyhedron in a subspace and  $f: V \to \mathbb{R}^m$  is linear and injective then f(P) is a polyhedron.



By 1.2 and examples (3) and (6) we can assume that all links and stars are polyhedra. This we do from now on.

#### **Piecewise-Linear Maps**

**1.4** A map  $f: P \to Q$  between polyhedra is *piecewise-linear* (abbreviated p.l.) if each point  $a \in P$  has a star N = aL such that  $f(\lambda a + \mu x) = \lambda f(a) + \mu f(x)$  where  $x \in L$  and  $\lambda, \mu \ge 0, \lambda + \mu = 1$ . In other words, f is locally conical, in the sense that it maps rays of the local cone structure linearly.

## 1.5 Examples

(1) A linear map is p.l.

(2) The restriction of a p.l. map to a subpolyhedron is p.l. A subpolyhedron is a subset which is itself a polyhedron.

(3) Define  $f: P \to Q$  to be *linear* if it is the restriction of a linear map  $\mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ . Then, combining (1) and (2), f is p.l.

(4) Let  $P = \bigcup P_{\alpha}$  be a locally finite decomposition of P into compact subpolyhedra. If  $f: P \to Q$  is a map such that  $f | P_{\alpha}$  is p.l. for each  $\alpha$ , then f is p.l.

*Remark.* Combining examples (3) and (4), we see that a map which is linear in pieces is p.l. In Chapter 2 we prove that all p.l. maps are obtained in this way, and this explains the terminology.

## 1.6 Exercises

- (1) The cartesian product of two p.l. maps is p.l.
- (2) The composition of two p.l. maps is p.l.
- (3) The cone construction. Let aP, bQ be cones and  $f: P \rightarrow Q$  a map.

Define the cone on f,  $f': aP \rightarrow bQ$  by  $f'(\lambda a + \mu x) = \lambda b + \mu f(x)$  where  $x \in P$ . Prove that the cone on a p.l. map or homeomorphism is itself a p.l. map or homeomorphism.

(4) A map  $f: P \to Q$  is p.l. if and only if the graph of f

 $\Gamma(f) = \{ (x, f(x)) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+m} | x \in P \}$ 

is a polyhedron.

*Hint*:  $\lambda(x, f(x)) + \mu(y, f(y)) = (z, f(z))$  for some z if and only if  $f(\lambda x + \mu y) = \lambda f(x) + \mu f(y)$ .

(5) Show that the inverse of a p.l. homeomorphism is again p.l.

P.1. homeomorphism is the principal equivalence relation of p.1. topology, and properties preserved under p.1. homeomorphism are called p.1. *invariants*. We will often use the symbol  $\cong$  for a p.1. homeomorphism.

#### 1.7 Exercises

(1) Give examples to show

(a) The union of two polyhedra is not necessarily a polyhedron.

(b) The infinite union of compact polyhedra is not necessarily a polyhedron.

(c) The image of a non-compact polyhedron under an injective p.l. map need not be a polyhedron. What about compact polyhedra, and general p.l. maps? (See 2.5 for answers.)

(2) Show by radial projection that the (topological) homeomorphism class of  $L_a(P)$  is a p.l. invariant of the pair (a, P).

## The Standard Mistake

The last exercise prompts the observation that *projection maps are not necessarily p.l.* For example the graph of a projection of one arc into another is part of a hyperbola.



Fig. 8

A p.l. version of exercise (2) will be given in Chapter 2, using "pseudoradial projection".

## P.L. Embeddings

Exercise 1.7(c) shows that we have to be careful about defining p.l. embeddings. We say that a p.l. map  $f: P \to Q$  is a p.l. embedding provided f(P) is a subpolyhedron of Q and  $f: P \to f(P)$  a p.l. homeomorphism.

## Convention. From now on we will usually omit the prefix p. l.

Thus map, embedding, homeomorphism will mean p.l. map etc. When we have need to use non p.l. maps we will use the phrase "topological map" in order to avoid confusion.

## Manifolds

**1.8** A polyhedron M is an unbounded p.l. manifold of dimension n (or simply an *n*-manifold) if each point  $x \in M$  has a neighbourhood in M, which is (p.l.) homeomorphic to an open set in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ; such a neighbourhood is called a *coordinate neighbourhood*. We often indicate the dimension of an *n*-manifold M by writing  $M^n$ .

*M* is an *n*-manifold with boundary if each point has a neighbourhood homeomorphic to an open subset of either  $\mathbb{R}^n$  or  $\mathbb{R}_+^n$ . Define the boundary of *M*,  $\partial M$ , an unbounded (n-1)-manifold, to consist of points corresponding to  $\mathbb{R}^{n-1} \times 0 \subset \mathbb{R}_+^n$ . The boundary is well-defined by 1.7(2) and elementary algebraic topology. This also follows by an easy induction using p.l. invariance of links (2.21(2)).

Terminology. A manifold M is closed provided  $\partial M = \emptyset$  and M is compact. If M is any manifold, define the interior of M, int M, to be  $M - \partial M$ .

- 1.9 Examples and exercises
- (1)  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $\mathbb{R}^n_+$  and subspaces of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  are manifolds.
- (2) An open subset of a manifold is a manifold.

(3) The product of an *n*-manifold with a *q*-manifold is an (n+q)-manifold.

*Hint*: Define a homeomorphism of  $\mathbb{R}^2_{++} = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2, x_1 \ge 0, x_2 \ge 0\}$ onto  $\mathbb{R}^2_+$  by using a linear homeomorphism of  $\mathbb{R}^2_{+++} = \{x \in \mathbb{R}^2, x_1 \ge x_2 \ge 0\}$  onto  $\mathbb{R}^2_{++}$ . Use this on suitable coordinates to define a homeomorphism of  $\mathbb{R}^n_+ \times \mathbb{R}^q_+$  onto  $\mathbb{R}^{n+q}_+$ .



Fig. 9

(4) It follows from (3) that  $I^n$  is an *n*-manifold with boundary. (5)  $\mathbb{R}^n \simeq 2I^{n+1}$  are point (This is difficult are 2.20 for a proof

(5)  $\mathbb{R}^n \cong \partial I^{n+1}$  - one point. (This is difficult, see 3.20 for a proof using machinery.)

## **Balls and Spheres**

A manifold homeomorphic with  $I^n$  is called an *n*-ball or *n*-disc often written  $B^n$  or  $D^n$ . A manifold homeomorphic with  $\partial I^{n+1}$  is called an *n*-sphere, usually written  $S^n$ .

**1.10** Lemma. Let  $B^n$ ,  $D^n$  be n-balls and  $h: \partial B^n \to \partial D^n$  a homeomorphism. Then h extends to a homeomorphism  $h_1$  of  $B^n$  with  $D^n$ .

*Proof.* We can assume  $B^n = D^n = I^n$  and then define  $h_1(\lambda x) = \lambda h(x)$  for  $x \in I^n$  and  $0 \le \lambda \le 1$ . This is the cone construction applied to  $I^n = 0I^n$ .



Fig. 10

## The Poincaré Conjecture and the h-Cobordism Theorem

We now state the main theorems for which we are heading.

Poincaré conjecture. Let  $M^n$  be a closed manifold having the homotopy type of an *n*-sphere, then M is an *n*-sphere.

#### **Theorem A.** The conjecture is true for $n \ge 6$ .

In fact the conjecture is true for n=5, but the proof at the moment is beyond the scope of an elementary treatment. For n=3,4 the conjecture is still, at the time of writting, unsolved.

We will deduce Theorem A from the *h*-cobordism theorem (Theorem B below). A *cobordism*  $(W^w, M_0, M_1)$  consists of a compact manifold W with  $\partial W$  the disjoint union of manifolds  $M_0$  and  $M_1$ . When  $M_0$  and  $M_1$  are understood, we refer to W itself as a cobordism. W is an *h*-cobordism if both inclusions  $M_0 \subset W$  and  $M_1 \subset W$  are homotopy equivalences.

**Theorem B.** Suppose  $W^{\kappa}$  is a simply connected h-cobordism and  $w \ge 6$ . Then  $W \cong M_0 \times I$  and hence  $M_0 \cong M_1$ .

*Remark.* If  $M_0$ ,  $M_1$  and W are all simply-connected, then by Whitehead's theorem (see Appendix A) it is enough to assume that all the relative homology groups  $H_*(W, M_0)$  and  $H_*(W, M_1)$  vanish. But by Lefschetz duality (see appendix and proof given in Chapter 5) it is enough to assume this for one end only. Consequently we can state Theorem B in the following form, which is the form in which it will be proved.

**Theorem B'.** Suppose  $(W^w, M_0, M_1)$  is a cobordism and that

- (1)  $\pi_1(M_0) = \pi_1(M_1) = \pi_1(W) = 0$
- (2)  $H_*(W, M_0) = 0$
- (3)  $w \ge 6$ .

Then  $W \cong M_0 \times I$ .

We shall also prove a relative version of the theorem (for cobordisms between manifolds with boundary) and a version for non-simply



Fig. 11

connected manifolds (the s-cobordism theorem). We conclude this chapter by showing that Theorem A follows from Theorem B':

In *M* choose two disjoint standard *n*-cubes inside coordinate neighbourhoods. Call them  $D_1$  and  $D_2$ .

Denote  $W_1 = cl(M - D_1)$  and  $W = cl(W_1 - D_2)$ . Then  $W_1$  and W are manifolds since  $cl(\mathbb{R}^n - I^n)$  is a manifold by an exercise on the lines of 1.9(3). We claim that W is an *h*-cobordism between  $\partial D_1$  and  $\partial D_2$ . First of all  $\pi_1(\partial D_1) = \pi_1(\partial D_2) = 0$  and  $\pi_1(W) = \pi_1(M) = 0$  since W has the homotopy type of  $M - \{$ two points $\}$ .

Now

$$\begin{aligned} H_*(W, \partial D_2) &\cong H_*(W_1, D_2) \qquad (\text{excision}) \\ &\cong \tilde{H}_*(W_1) \qquad (\text{since } D_2 \text{ is contractible}). \end{aligned}$$

But

$$H_*(W_1) \cong H^{n-*}(W_1, \partial D_1) \quad \text{(Lefschetz duality)}$$
  

$$\cong H^{n-*}(M, D_1) \quad \text{(excision)}$$
  

$$\cong \tilde{H}^{n-*}(M)$$
  

$$\cong \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z} \quad *=0 \\ 0 \quad \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \text{ since } M \text{ is a homotopy sphere.}$$

It follows that  $\tilde{H}_*(W_1) = 0$  and hence that W is an h-cobordism.

By Theorem B' there is a homeomorphism  $h: W \to \dot{I}^n \times I^1$  and we extend h to a homeomorphism of M with  $\dot{I}^{n+1}$  by two applications of 1.10.

In this chapter we introduce the principal tools of p.l. topology: simplicial complexes and simplicial maps. The connections between these and polyhedra and p.l. maps is the major concern of the chapter. The rest of the chapter deals with other useful tools: pseudo-radial projection, joins and collars. The results on convex cells which we need are given in an appendix to the chapter.

#### Simplexes

2.1 Proposition. The join operation is associative and commutative and

$$A_0 A_1 \dots A_n = \left\{ \sum \lambda_i a_i | \lambda_i \ge 0, \sum \lambda_i = 1, a_i \in A_i \right\}.$$

*Proof.* Define  $A_0 A_1 \dots A_n$  inductively to be  $(A_0 \dots A_{n-1}) A_n$  and prove the identity inductively. Associativity and commutativity then follow. The induction step follows from the equation

$$\sum \lambda_i a_i = (1 - \lambda_n) \left( \left( \frac{\lambda_0}{1 - \lambda_n} \right) a_0 + \dots + \left( \frac{\lambda_{n-1}}{1 - \lambda_n} \right) a_n \right) + \lambda_n a_n.$$

Now define a finite set  $\{v_0, v_1, ..., v_n\} \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  to be *independent* if it is not contained in any subspace of dimension  $\langle n, or$  equivalently if the vectors  $\{v_i - v_0\}$  are linearly independent. Then define an *n*-simplex  $A \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  to be the repeated join  $v_0 v_1 ... v_n$  of n+1 independent points. We call the points  $v_i$  the vertices of A and say that they span A. A simplex spanned by a subset of the vertices is called a *face* of A. If B is a face of A we write B < A. B is a proper face if also  $B \neq A$ . The vertices are also regarded as faces. The point  $\hat{A} = \sum \frac{1}{n+1} v_i$  is the barycentre of A. Note that a simplex is a compact polyhedron by induction since it is the cone on an (n-1)-simplex (see 1.3(7)). The empty set is regarded as a (-1)-simplex, has no vertices, and is thus a face of all simplexes. Exercises

Let A be an *n*-simplex in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ .

(1) Show that A is contained in a unique minimal subspace V of  $\mathbb{R}^m$  of dimension n. We write  $V = \langle A \rangle$  and say A spans V. Note that if A is a 0-simplex  $A = \langle A \rangle$ .

(2) Define  $\dot{A}$ ,  $\dot{A}$  to be the interior and frontier of A in  $\langle A \rangle$  and show that  $\dot{A} \neq \emptyset$  and  $\dot{A} = \bigcup \{B | B < A, B \neq A\}$ .

(3) Show that  $v \in A$  is a vertex if and only if  $L \cap A$  is not a neighbourhood of v in L for every line L through v in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ .

**2.2 Theorem.** A compact polyhedron is a finite union of simplexes. In general a polyhedron is a locally finite union of simplexes.

*Proof.* Let P be a compact polyhedron in  $\mathbb{R}^m$  and define the subspace  $\langle P \rangle \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  spanned by P to be the intersection of all subspaces V with  $P \subset V$ . The proof is by induction on  $n = \text{dimension} \langle P \rangle$ . Without loss of generality we may assume (cf. 1.3(8)) that  $P \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . Let  $a \in P$  and suppose aL is a star of a in P, which is also an  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood (1.2). Now let F be a proper face of the cube  $N_c(a, \mathbb{R}^n)$  (cf. 1.3(6)) then  $\dim \langle F \cap L \rangle < n$  and hence  $F \cap L$  is a finite union of simplexes. Since  $L \subset N_i(a, \mathbb{R}^n)$  it follows that L is a finite union of simplexes, say  $L = \bigcup_i A_i$ . Then  $aL = \bigcup_i aA_i$  is also a finite union. The result now follows by compactness.

In the general case the idea is to use local compactness to decompose P into a locally finite union of cone  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhoods, each of which is a finite union of simplexes by the first half. We will list the steps in the proof and leave the details to the reader:

(1) Find a countable base  $\{U_i\}$  of  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhoods for  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

(2) Define  $U_{i_1}, U_{i_2}, ...$  by  $U_i$  is a  $U_{i_k}$  if  $U_i \cap P$  is non-empty and compact. (3) By taking suitable increasing unions of the  $U_{i_k}$  find compact polyhedra  $A_1, A_2, A_3, ...$  so that  $P = \bigcup_i A_i$  and  $A_i \subset$  interior of  $A_{i+1}$  in P for each i.

(4) Show that a finite cover of  $A_i$  extends to one of  $A_{i+1}$  so that no new neighbourhood meets  $A_{i-1}$ .

*Exercise* (Dimension). Define the dimension of an *n*-simplex to be *n* and in general define the dimension of a polyhedron by  $\dim(P) = \max \dim(A_i)$ , where  $P = \bigcup A_i$  is the decomposition of 2.2. Check that dimension is well-defined.

**2.3 Corollary.** Let  $f: P \to Q$  be p.l., then there is a locally finite decomposition of P into simplexes,  $P = \bigcup A_i$ , such that  $f | A_i$  is linear for each i.

Cells

*Proof.* Apply 2.2 to  $\Gamma f$ .

## **2.4** Lemma. The linear image of a simplex is a polyhedron.

*Proof.* Let  $A \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  be an *n*-simplex and let  $f: \mathbb{R}^m \to \mathbb{R}^p$  be linear. Then either  $f | \langle A \rangle$  is injective, in which case f(A) is an *n*-simplex, or else  $f(\langle A \rangle)$  is a subspace of lower dimension, in which case  $f(A) = f(\dot{A})$ . [For if  $x \in f(A)$  then  $f^{-1}(x) \cap \langle A \rangle$  is a subspace of dimension >0 which must meet the frontier of A in  $\langle A \rangle$ , namely  $\dot{A}$ .] In this case the result follows by induction since  $\dot{A}$  is a union of simplexes of dimension  $\langle n \rangle$ .

**2.5** Corollary (cf. 1.7). The image of a compact polyhedron under a p.l. map is a compact polyhedron.

Proof. By 2.3 and 2.4 it is a finite union of compact polyhedra.

## Cells

A subset  $C \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  is *convex* if for each pair of points  $a, b \in C$ , the arc  $ab \subset C$ .

A compact convex polyhedron which spans a subspace of dimension *n* is called a *linear n-cell* or just a *cell*.

#### 2.6 Examples and remarks

(1) An *n*-simplex is an *n*-cell;  $I^n$  is an *n*-cell. A 0-cell is a point and a 1-cell is an arc.

(2) The linear image of a cell is a cell (convexity is obvious, polyhedron by 2.5).

(3) Let  $\{a_0, a_1, ..., a_r\} \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  be any finite set, then their join  $a_0 a_1 ... a_r = \{\sum \lambda_i a_i | \lambda_i \ge 0, \sum \lambda_i = 1\}$  is a cell, called the cell *spanned* by  $\{a_0, ..., a_r\}$ . This follows from (2) since there is a linear map from an *r*-simplex onto the cell.

The converse to (3) is also true, see 2.7 below.

(4) The intersection or product of two cells is a cell.

(5) The intersection of a cell with a subspace or a half space is a cell. (6) If C is an *n*-cell then dim C=n. For, since dim  $\langle C \rangle = n$ , C contains an independent set of n+1 points, and by convexity, it contains the simplex spanned by this set, which could be taken to be one of the simplexes in the decomposition of C given by 2.2.

(7) Define  $\mathring{C}$ ,  $\mathring{C}$  to be the interior and frontier of C in  $\langle C \rangle$ . Then  $\mathring{C} \neq \emptyset$  by the last remark.

We now define the faces of a cell. Let C be a cell and  $x \in C$  an arbitrary point. Define  $\langle x, C \rangle$  to be the union of lines L through x in  $\mathbb{R}^m$  such that  $L \cap C$  (which is a 1-cell or 0-cell and hence either an arc or a point) is an arc with x in its interior. It follows from convexity

that  $\langle x, C \rangle$  is a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^m$  (the proofs of this fact and of 2.7 below are given in an appendix to this chapter). If there are no such lines then define  $\langle x, C \rangle = x$  and call x a vertex of C. In general call the cell  $\langle x, C \rangle \cap C$  a face of C denoted  $C_x$  and written  $C_x < C$ . Thus a vertex is a face and, by 2.6(7), C < C. If D < C and  $D \neq C$  then say D is a proper face of C and then dim $D < \dim C$  since  $\langle x, C \rangle \notin \langle C \rangle$  where  $D = C_x$ . The empty set is defined to be a face of all cells.

## 2.7 Proposition. Suppose C is an n-cell, then:

(1) C has finitely many vertices  $v_0, v_1, \ldots, v_r$  which span C.

(2) If F < C then F is spanned by a subset of the vertices and hence C has only finitely many faces.

*Warning*: Not all subsets of vertices span faces, for example two opposite corners of a square.

- (3)  $C = disjoint \bigcup \{\mathring{F} | F < C\},\ \mathring{C} = disjoint \bigcup \{\mathring{F} | F < C, F \neq C\}.$
- (4) If F < D < C then F < C.
- (5) If F, D < C then  $F \cap D < C$ .
- (6) Let  $x \in C$  then C = the cone x B where  $B = \bigcup \{F | F < C, x \notin F\}$ .

*Exercise.* Check that the definition of a face of a general cell is compatible with that for a simplex or a cube.

## **Cell Complexes**

A cell complex K is a finite collection of cells in some  $\mathbb{R}^n$  satisfying

- (1) If  $C \in K$  and B < C then  $B \in K$ .
- (2) If  $B, C \in K$  then  $B \cap C$  is a face of both B and C.

Define the underlying polyhedron |K| to be the union of the cells of K.

## 2.8 Examples and exercises

(1) A cell C determines two complexes  $\{B | B < C\}$  and  $\{B | B < C, B \neq C\}$ (by 2.7). With abuse of notation, we denote these C and  $\dot{C}$  respectively. (2) If K is a cell complex in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and  $f: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  is a linear homeomorphism then  $fK = \{fC | C \in K\}$  is a cell complex.

(3) Let  $G \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  be compact then there is a cell complex K with  $G \subset |K|$  and typical *m*-cell of the form

$$[n_1, n_1+1] \times [n_2, n_2+1] \times \cdots \times [n_m, n_m+1]$$

where  $n_i$  are integers. In other words K is part of the cube "lattice" in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ .

(4) If K is a cell complex then  $|K| = \text{disjoint} \bigcup \{ \mathring{C} | C \in K \}$ .

(5) If K and L are cell complexes then their intersection  $M = \{A \cap B | A \in K, B \in L\}$  and their product  $K \times L = \{A \times B | A \in K, B \in L\}$  are cell complexes.

*Hint*: First prove  $\langle x, A \cap B \rangle = \langle x, A \rangle \cap \langle x, E \rangle$ , which implies  $(A \cap B)_x = A_x \cap B_x$  and a similar result with  $\times$  replacing  $\cap$ .

(6) If  $f: |K| \to |L|$  is linear on each cell of K then  $\{A \cap f^{-1}(B) | A \in K, B \in L\}$  is a cell complex.

(7) If a|K| is a cone then  $aK = \{a, aB, B|B \in K\}$  is a cell complex, called the *cone* on K.

Now define  $L \subset K$  to be a subcomplex if L is also a cell complex.

(8) The r-skeleton of K,  $K^r = \{C | C \in K, \dim C \leq r\}$ , is a subcomplex.

(9) If  $C \in K$  then the star of C in K,  $st(C,K) = \{B|B < D > C, D \in K\}$  is a subcomplex.

## **Subdivisions**

L is a subdivision of K, written  $L \triangleleft K$ , if |L| = |K| and each cell of L is contained in a cell of K.

Let  $a \in |K|$ , we say  $K' \triangleleft K$  is obtained by *starring* at *a* if *K'* is obtained from *K* by replacing each cell  $C \in K$  with  $a \in C$  by the complex *aB* where  $B = \{F | F < C, a \notin F\}$  (cf. 2.7(6)). The result of starring at points  $a_1, a_2, ..., a_r \in |K|$  in order is called a *stellar* subdivision of *K*.



Fig. 13. A subdivision of a 2-simplex which is not stellar

## **Simplicial Complexes**

A cell complex K is simplicial if each  $C \in K$  is a simplex.

**2.9 Proposition.** A cell complex can be subdivided to a simplicial complex without introducing any new vertices.

*Proof.* Let K be the cell complex. Order the vertices of K and suppose inductively we have constructed a simplicial subdivision of  $K^{r-1}$ . Let C be an r-cell of K and x its first vertex. Let B be the union of faces of C which do not contain x. By induction, B has been subdivided to a simplicial complex and C is the cone xB. This shows how to subdivide C; the ordering ensures compatibility with the subdivision of  $\dot{C}$ .

*Exercise.* The subdivision of 2.9 may be described as starring at each vertex of K in turn using the given ordering.

**2.10** Corollary. Given any simplex  $A \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  and compact set  $G \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ , there is a simplicial complex K with  $A \in K$  and  $G \subset |K|$ .

*Proof.* Let L be the simplicial subdivision of the cube  $[0, 1]^n$  given by 2.9. Since complexes are preserved by linear homeomorphisms (2.8(2)) we may assume  $A \in L$ . L extends to the required K by 2.8(3) and 2.9.

**2.11 Theorem.** Any compact polyhedron is the underlying polyhedron of some simplicial complex.

*Proof.* Write  $P \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  as the finite union of simplexes  $A_1, \ldots, A_r$  by 2.2. By 2.10 find complexes  $K_i$  with  $A_i \in K_i$  and  $P \subset |K_i|$ . Then the intersection of the  $K_i$  is a cell complex M which contains subcomplexes corresponding to each  $A_i$  and hence one corresponding to P. Finally use 2.9 to replace this by a simplicial complex.

**2.12** Addendum. If  $|K| \supset |L_i|$  i = 1, ..., r then there are simplicial subdivisions  $K' \triangleleft K$  and  $L'_i \triangleleft L$  such that  $L'_i \subset K'$ , each i.

*Proof.* By 2.9 we can assume that K and each  $L_i$  are simplicial and then in the proof of 2.11 take the simplexes  $A_i$  to be the simplexes of  $K, L_1, \ldots, L_r$ .

## Simplicial Maps

Let K, L be cell complexes and  $f: |K| \to |L|$  a map. We say (f, K, L) is *cellular* or simply f is cellular if, for each  $C \in K$ , f|C is linear and f(C) is a cell of L. If K and L are simplicial then say that f is *simplicial*. Note that a cellular map is automatically p.l. by 1.5(4). A cellular homeomorphism is called a *cellular isomorphism* or just an isomorphism. The inverse of an isomorphism is also an isomorphism.

*Exercise.* A simplicial map is determined by its values on vertices: i.e. if  $f: K^0 \rightarrow L^0$  carries the vertices of each simplex of K into some simplex of L, then f is the restriction of a unique simplicial map.

**2.13 Lemma.** Let  $f: |K| \to |L| \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be a map which is linear on cells of K. Then there are simplicial subdivisions  $K' \lhd K$  and  $L' \lhd L$  such that  $f: |K'| \to |L'|$  is simplicial.

*Proof.* Each  $f(A_i)$ ,  $A_i \in K$ , is a cell by 2.6(2) and by 2.12 we can find simplicial  $L' \triangleleft L$  such that  $f(A_i) = |\tilde{A}_i|$  for  $\tilde{A}_i \subset L'$ . Then

$$K^{\prime\prime} = \{A \cap f^{-1} B | A \in K, B \in L'\}$$

is a cell complex by 2.8(6). Let K' be the simplicial subdivision of K'' given by 2.9 then  $f: K' \rightarrow L'$  is simplicial.

**2.14** Theorem. Let  $f: |K| \to |L|$  be p.l. then there are simplicial subdivisions  $K' \triangleleft K$ ,  $L' \triangleleft L$  such that  $f: |K'| \to |L'|$  is simplicial.

*Proof.* By 2.3 we can decompose |K| into a finite union of simplexes  $A_1, \ldots, A_r$  such that  $f|A_i$  is linear. By 2.12 we can find  $K'' \lhd K$ ,  $A''_i \lhd A_i$  such that  $A''_i \subset K''$ . f is then linear on simplexes of K'' and the result follows by 2.13.

Convention. From now on "complex" means simplicial complex and letters J, K, L, K', L' etc. denote simplicial complexes. We sometimes write  $f: K \to L$  for  $f: |K| \to |L|$  is simplicial.

## Triangulations

The last two theorems (2.11 and 2.14) have shown the intimate connection between polyhedra and simplicial complexes – every compact polyhedron underlies some simplicial complex and every p.l. map between compact polyhedra is a simplicial map between suitable complexes.

We now introduce a more general relation between complexes and polyhedra which has the advantage of being p.l. invariant:

A triangulation of a compact polyhedron P is a pair (K, t) where  $t: |K| \rightarrow P$  is a (p.l. as always) homeomorphism. We identify two triangulations of P if they differ by (simplicial) isomorphism, that is if



commutes, where  $i: K_1 \to K_2$  is an isomorphism. Notice that (K, t) corresponds to a complex  $\tilde{K}$  with  $|\tilde{K}| = P$  if and only if t is linear on simplexes, and we therefore call such triangulations *linear*. If  $K' \triangleleft K$  then we call the triangulation (K', t) a subdivision of (K, t). Any two triangulations of P have a common subdivision by 2.14 applied to the homeomorphism  $t_2^{-1} \circ t_1: |K_1| \to |K_2|$ . When considering one particular triangulation of P, we will often identify |K| with P via t, and only be more precise when confusion is possible. For example, Theorem 2.14 can now be reinterpreted as a theorem about maps between triangulated polyhedra, and similarly for the general subdivision Theorem 2.15 below.

## Subdividing Diagrams of Maps

A diagram D is a finite directed 1-complex, in which each vertex is labelled by a space and each edge by a map between the spaces at its ends. A diagram is a *tree* if it is simply-connected (as a 1-complex) and is a *one-way* tree if each space is the domain of at most one map.



Fig. 14

*Exercise*. Any tree may be constructed by starting with a vertex and inductively adjoining directed edges by identifying one vertex with an existing vertex, and any such construct is a tree.

We will consider diagrams labelled by triangulated polyhedra and p.l. maps and use the convention mentioned above, so that we identify a triangulated polyhedron with the complex which triangulates it. Let D be such a diagram, a subdivision  $D' \triangleleft D$  is obtained by relabelling each vertex by a subdivision of the original label. A diagram D is simplicial if each map in D is simplicial.

**2.15** Theorem. Let T be a one-way tree of triangulated polyhedra and p.l. maps then T has a simplicial subdivision T'. If all the maps in T are injective then the one-way condition may be omitted.

*Proof.* By induction on the number of maps in *T*. Find a map  $f: |K| \to |L|$  in *T* such that *K* is not involved in any other map of *T* and choose a simplicial subdivision  $f: K' \to L'$ . Let  $T_*$  denote *T* with *K* and *f* omitted and with *L'* replacing *L*. By induction  $T_*$  has a simplicial subdivision  $T'_*$  and  $L' \in T'_*$  where  $L' \triangleleft L'$ . We can find  $K'' \triangleleft K'$  such that  $f: K'' \to L'$  is simplicial by Lemma 2.16 below and this gives a simplicial subdivision of *T*, as required. In the injective case we use the same proof except that we might have  $f: K \leftarrow L$  instead of  $f: K \to L$ . In this case use Lemma 2.17 instead of 2.16.

**2.16** Lemma. Suppose that  $f: K \to L$  is simplicial and  $L' \to L$ . Then there is  $K' \triangleleft K$  such that  $f: K' \to L'$  is simplicial.

*Proof.* The cell complex  $K'' = \{A \cap f^{-1}B | A \in K, B \in L'\}$  (see 2.8(6)) subdivides K and  $f: K'' \to L'$  is cellular. Let  $K' \triangleleft K''$  be the simplicial subdivision of 2.9 then  $f: K' \to L'$  is simplicial.

**2.17** Lemma. Suppose that  $f: L \to K$  is a simplicial injection and  $L' \triangleleft L$ . Then there is  $K' \triangleleft K$  such that  $f: L' \to K'$  is simplicial.

*Proof.* Identify L with f(L) and choose a point  $a_i \in \mathring{A}_i$  for each  $A \in K$  such that  $A \notin L$ . Now define K' inductively over skeleta by the formulae

$$A'_{i} = \begin{cases} a_{i} \dot{A}'_{i} & A_{i} \notin L, \\ A'_{i} & A_{i} \in L, \ A'_{i} \subset L'. \end{cases}$$

Remark. A more economical subdivision of K extending L' is given later (see 3.4).

## Examples and exercises

(1) The "dual" of 2.16 is false. The unit interval I is a simplex and hence can be also considered as a complex. Let  $I_{\frac{1}{3}}$  be I with a new vertex at  $\frac{1}{3}$  and let  $I' \triangleleft I_{\frac{1}{3}}$  have a further vertex at  $\frac{2}{3}$ . Then f(0)=0,  $f(\frac{1}{3})=1$ , f(1)=0 determines a simplicial map  $f: I_{\frac{1}{3}} \rightarrow I$  and there is no  $I'' \triangleleft I$  so that  $f: I' \rightarrow I''$  is simplicial.

(2) The one-way condition in 2.15 cannot be dropped for consider



Here f is defined as in (1) and g is similar except that  $g(\frac{2}{3}) = 1$ . This tree cannot be triangulated.

(3) Let  $f: I_{\frac{1}{3}} \to I_{\frac{1}{3}}$  be defined by f(0)=0, f(1)=1 and  $f(\frac{1}{3})=\frac{2}{3}$ . Then there is no  $I' \lhd I$  such that  $f: I' \to I'$  is simplicial. Thus loops, even of homeomorphisms, cannot in general be triangulated.

#### Derived Subdivisions

If in the proof of 2.17 we have L' = L and allow L, K to be cell complexes then  $K' \triangleleft K$  is called a *derived* subdivision of K, obtained by *deriving* K*away from* L. If  $L = \emptyset$  then K' is a *first derived*, usually denoted  $K^{(1)}$ , and an *r*-th derived  $K^{(r)}$  is defined inductively by  $K^{(r)} = (K^{(r-1)})^{(1)}$ . A derived is *barycentric* if each  $a_i = \hat{A}_i$ . Note that  $K^{(1)}$  is always a simplicial complex.

#### Exercises

(1) Show that  $K^{(1)} = \{a_{i_0}a_{i_1} \dots a_{i_r} | A_{i_0} < \dots < A_{i_r} \in K\}$ .

(2) Show that deriving may be described as starring  $A_i$  at  $a_i$  in order of decreasing dimension of  $A_i$ .

## **Abstract Isomorphism of Cell Complexes**

Cell complexes K, L are abstractly isomorphic if there is a bijection  $j: K \to L$  such that  $A < B \in K$  implies j(A) < j(B).

**2.18** Lemma. If  $j: K \to L$  is an abstract isomorphism of cell complexes then there is a homeomorphism  $f: |K| \to |L|$  such that f(A)=j(A) for each  $A \in K$ .

*Proof.* Choose deriveds  $K^{(1)}$  and  $L^{(1)}$  and define the simplicial isomorphism  $f: K^{(1)} \to L^{(1)}$  by  $f(a_i) = b_k$  where  $j(A_i) = B_k$ .

Notice that f may be regarded as built up by inductive use of the cone construction.

#### **Pseudo-Radial Projection**

As promised in Chapter 1 we now prove p.l. invariance of links and stars. Let K be a complex and let  $a \in K$  be a vertex. Define

$$lk(a, K) = \{A | A \in K, a A \in K, a \notin A\}$$

then it is easy to see that st(a, K) is the cone a lk(a, K). Thus |st(a, K)| and |lk(a, K)| are an example of a link and star of a in |K|. Conversely,

given a compact polyhedron P with  $a \in P$  and a star N = aL of a in P, triangulate P - (N - L) with L a subcomplex and extend to N by taking the cone on L from a. Then N = |st(a, K)| and L = |lk(a, K)| in this triangulation. Therefore p.l. invariance of links and stars is a consequence of the following lemma (in the non-compact case, consider a compact neighbourhood of a in P):

**2.19** Lemma. Suppose that  $f: (|K|, a) \rightarrow (|L|, b)$  is a homeomorphism with  $a \in K, b \in L$ . Then there is a homeomorphism  $|lk(a, K)| \rightarrow |lk(b, L)|$ .

*Proof.* Let  $f_1: (K', a) \to (L', b)$  be a simplicial subdivision of f then lk(a, K') is isomorphic to lk(a, L'). Therefore it suffices to show |lk(a, K')| homeomorphic to |lk(a, K)| for  $K' \triangleleft K$ . Let the simplexes of lk(a, K') be  $A_i, i = 1, ..., r$ , and let  $A_i^+$  be the extended cone on  $A_i$  from a defined by

$$A_i^+ = \{ \lambda \, a + \mu \, b | b \in A_i, \ \lambda \leq 1, \ \mu \geq 0 \text{ and } \lambda + \mu = 1 \}.$$



Fig. 15

Then  $M = \{A_i^+ \cap B | B \in lk(a, K)\}$  is a simplicial subdivision of lk(a, K). Moreover (topological) radial projection  $|lk(a, K')| \rightarrow |M|$  maps simplexes homeomorphically onto simplexes and hence determines a simplicial isomorphism by restricting to vertices. This isomorphism is referred to as a *pseudo-radial projection*.

#### **2.20** Corollary. A linear n-cell is an n-ball.

*Proof.* Let C be an *n*-cell then without loss we may suppose  $\langle C \rangle = \mathbb{R}^n$ . Choose  $a \in \mathring{C}$  and N = aL a cone  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood of a in C. Now  $C = a \mathring{C}$  is also a star of a in C by 2.7(6); it follows that C is homeomorphic to N which is linearly homeomorphic to  $I^n$ .



## 2.21 Exercises

(1) Suppose J is a simplicial complex then |J| is an n-manifold if and only if |lk(x, J)| is an (n-1) sphere or ball for each vertex x∈J.
 (2) Prove that I<sup>n</sup> ≇ İ<sup>n+1</sup> by induction using 2.19. Deduce that the boundary of a manifold is well-defined.

*Remark.* By 2.20 a cell C is a manifold with int  $C = \mathring{C}$  and  $\partial C = \dot{C}$ . This means that the two notations for interior and boundary are consistent and we will, from now on, use them interchangeably. For example if M is any manifold then we will write either int M or  $\mathring{M}$  for its interior.

## **External Joins**

Let  $P, Q \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  be compact polyhedra then PQ is a union of joins of simplexes by 2.1 and hence a union of cells (2.6(3)) and thus also a compact polyhedron. However PQ is not a p.l. invariant of P and Q since it depends on the geometric relationship of P and Q as subsets of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ; but in the special case that P and Q are *independent* in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  we shall see that PQ is a p.l. invariant:

Subsets A,  $B \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  are *independent* if each point in AB may be written uniquely in the form  $\lambda a + \mu b$ ,  $\lambda, \mu \ge 0$ ,  $\lambda + \mu = 1$ ,  $a \in A$ ,  $b \in B$ . Equivalently  $A \cap B = \emptyset$  and the interiors of the arcs  $a_1 b_1$  and  $a_2 b_2$  are disjoint unless  $a_1 = a_2$  and  $b_1 = b_2$  where  $a_1, a_2 \in A$ ,  $b_1, b_2 \in B$ . In particular *aB* is a cone if and only if *a*, *B* are independent. We also define  $\emptyset$  and any *A* to be independent.

## 2.22 Exercises and remarks

(1) If A and B are simplexes then they are independent if and only if their vertices form an independent set. Hence in this case AB is a simplex of dimension dim  $A + \dim B + 1$ .

(2) If |K|, |L| are independent then define the simplicial join KL to consist of simplexes A, B, AB for  $A \in K$ ,  $B \in L$ . KL is then a complex of dimension dim  $K + \dim L + 1$ .

(3) Let  $A \in K$ . Define  $lk(A, K) = \{B | AB \in K, A \cap B = \emptyset\}$ . Then |A| and llk(A, K) are independent and st(A, K) = A lk(A, K).

(4) If  $f, g: A, B \to C, D$  are maps between independent pairs then define the join  $t: AB \to CD$  by  $t(\lambda a + \mu b) = \lambda f(a) + \mu g(b)$ . Then the join of simplicial maps is simplicial and hence the join of two (p.l.) maps is a (p.l.) map.

(5) Suppose given homeomorphisms  $P_0 \cong P_1$ ,  $Q_0 \cong Q_1$ , where  $P_i$ ,  $Q_i$  are independent, i=0, 1, then by (4) we have a homeomorphism  $P_0 Q_0 \cong P_1 Q_1$ .

We now define the *external join* of polyhedra  $P \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ ,  $Q \subset \mathbb{R}^m$  denoted  $P * Q \subset \mathbb{R}^{n+m+1}$ . Let  $i_1 \colon P \to \mathbb{R}^{n+m+1}$  be defined by

$$i_1(x) = (x_1, \dots, x_n, 0, 0, \dots, 0)$$
 and  $i_2: Q \to \mathbb{R}^{n+m+1}$ 

by

$$i_2(x) = (0, \ldots, 0, x_1, \ldots, x_m, 1).$$

Then  $i_1(P)$  and  $i_2(Q)$  are independent and we define  $P * Q = i_1(P) i_2(Q)$ . By (5) above P \* Q is homeomorphic to any independent join PQ. Given  $f, g: P, Q \to P_1, Q_1$  define  $f * g: P * Q \to P_1 * Q_1$  by (4) above.



Fig. 17. The external join of  $I^1$  and  $\dot{I}^1$ 

#### **2.23** Proposition. Joins of balls and spheres obey the rules

$$B^{p} * B^{q} = B^{p+q+1}$$

$$S^{p} * B^{q} = B^{p+q+1}$$

$$S^{p} * S^{q} = S^{p+q+1}.$$

*Proof.* The first part follows from the fact that the join of two cells a cell. For the second half consider the independent subsets  $I^{p+1} \times I$ 

 $0 \times I^q \subset \mathbb{R}^{p+q+1}$ . Their join is a cell. For the last part consider the boundary of this example with q replaced by q+1.

## 2.24 Exercises

(1) The join operation \* is associative and commutative up to a linear isomorphism.

(2) Define independence for a finite number of subsets  $A_1, \ldots, A_n$  by uniqueness of the formula of 2.1. Check that this generalises the notion of independence for finite sets of points (defined below 2.1) and that each join  $(A_{i_1} \ldots A_{i_r})(A_{i_{r+1}} \ldots A_{i_n})$  is independent.

(3) Show that  $|lk((x, y), P \times Q)| \cong |lk(x, P)| * |lk(y, Q)|$  and deduce from 2.21(1) that  $X \times \mathbb{R}^1$  is a manifold if and only if X is a manifold.

(4) Show that |J| is an *n*-manifold implies that lk(A, J) is a ball or a sphere of dimension  $n - \dim A - 1$ .

*Hint*: Use induction and the fact that lk(a, lk(B, J)) = lk(A, J) where *B* is a top dimensional face of *A* and *a* is the opposite vertex.

(5) Show that  $A * B = S^n$  implies that both A and B are spheres.

## Collars

Let  $P \subset Q$  be polyhedra then a *collar* on P in Q is an embedding  $c: P \times I \rightarrow Q$  such that c(x, 0) = x and such that  $c(P \times [0, 1))$  is an open neighbourhood of P in Q; we also call  $c(P \times I)$  a collar. We are interested in the existence of collars. An obviously necessary condition is that the collar should exist *locally* i.e. for each  $a \in P$  there exist neighbourhoods N(a, P), N(a, Q) with  $N(a, Q) = N(a, P) \times I$  where N(a, P) is identified with  $N(a, P) \times 0$ . This condition is also sufficient; we will prove this in the case when P is compact:

**2.25** Theorem. Suppose  $P \subset Q$  is locally collared and compact. Then there is a collar on P in Q.

*Proof.* Suppose  $Q \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  and define  $Q_+ = Q \times 1 \cup P \times I \subset \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^1$ . Then  $Q_+$  can be regarded as Q with a collar added to P "on the outside".

We will construct a homeomorphism  $h: Q \to Q_+$  by "pushing" along the *I*-lines of  $P \times I$  such that  $h|P: P \to P \times 0$  is the identity. Then  $h^{-1}$  of the natural collar on  $P \times 0$  in  $P \times I$  gives a collar on P in Q. We will now describe one local "push": Let  $a \in P$  and let  $N(a, Q) = N(a, P) \times [1, 2]$  be the neighbourhoods given by local collaring, and assume without loss that  $N(a, P) = N_a(P)$  and  $N_a(P) \times [1, 2]$  are stars. Then we have  $N_a(P) \times [0, 2]$ embedded in  $Q_+$  with  $N_a(P)$  identified with  $N_a(P) \times 1$ . Define a self homeomorphism of  $N_a(P) \times [0, 2]$  by regarding it as a cone with base  $L_a(P) \times [0, 2] \cup N_a(P) \times \partial [0, 2]$  and vertex (a, 1). Move the vertex from (a, 1) down to  $(a, \frac{1}{2})$  and extend by the cone construction. Call the resulting homeomorphism of  $Q_+$ , given by extending by the identity,  $h_a$ .



Fig. 18

Now, using local collarability and compactness of P, find a set  $N_{a_i}(P)$  of stars, i=1, 2, ..., t, for each of which the local push described above exists, and such that  $\bigcup_i (N_{a_i}(P) - L_{a_i}(P)) = P$ . Then define the homeomorphism  $h': Q_+ \to Q_+$  to be the composition  $h_{a_i} \circ h_{a_{i-1}} \circ \cdots \circ h_{a_i}$ , i.e. the result of doing each push in order.

Notice that each push  $h_a$  carries the point (x, s) to (x, s') where  $s' \leq s$ and s' < s if  $s \neq 0$  or 2 and  $x \in N_a(P) - L_a(P)$ . Therefore for each  $x \in P = P \times 1$ we have h'(x) = (x, t) where 0 < t < 1.

Now let  $T = h'(Q) \cap P \times I$ , i.e. the part of  $P \times I$  "above" h'(P); we show how to "stretch" T onto  $P \times I$  by a homeomorphism g which is the identity on  $P \times 1$  and carries h'(P) to  $P \times 0$  and then, after extending gby the identity to Q, we can define  $h = g \circ h'$ . Consider the projection  $p:h'(P) \subset P \times I \to P$  and triangulate P by a complex K so that p is simplicial. Then for each  $A \in K$  we have the cell  $A_+ = T \cap A \times I$ ; and T becomes a cell complex by taking cells  $A_+$  with their faces. T is then abstractly isomorphic with  $K \times I$ ; so the required homeomorphism is given by 2.18, and we observe that the proof of 2.18 allows us to assume  $g|P \times 1 = id$ and  $g: h'(P) \to P \times 0$  is the obvious map.



Fig. 19

*Remark.* More general collaring theorems will be proved in Chapter 4. We leave it as an exercise to remove the compactness condition on *P*.

*Hint*: Define h' similarly, using a locally finite set of pushes. Then construct g inductively over compact pieces.

**2.26** Corollary. Let M be a manifold with  $\partial M$  compact then  $\partial M$  may be collared in M.

*Proof.* Local collaring is implied by the definition of a manifold.

## 2.27 Final exercises

(1) Abstract simplicial complexes. Given a simplicial complex K we can "abstract" the information

(i) vertex set of K

(ii) the subsets of this set which span simplexes.

This suggests defining an abstract simplicial complex to consist of

(i) a finite set  $K^0$ 

(ii) a family K of subsets of  $K^0$  (the simplexes)

such that

(a) if  $\tau \subset \sigma \in K$  then  $\tau \in K$ . It then follows that

(b) if  $\sigma, \tau \in K$  then  $\sigma \cap \tau \in K$ .

Prove that K can be *realised* as a simplicial complex in  $\mathbb{R}^{|K^0|-1}$  and that any two realisations are isomorphic. (*Hint*: Realise the vertices independently and use the exercise above 2.13 for the second half.)

(2) Gluing. Let  $P_0 \subset P$ ,  $Q_0 \subset Q$  be polyhedra and  $h: P_0 \to Q_0$  a homeomorphism. Define  $P \cup_h Q$  to be the (topological) space obtained by identifying  $P_0$  with  $Q_0$  by h. Prove that  $P \cup_h Q$  can be embedded as a polyhedron in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  for some n so that the natural maps  $P \to P \cup_h Q$  and  $Q \to P \cup_h Q$  are p.1. embeddings. (*Hint*: Triangulate everything and use exercise (1).)

(3) Abstract polyhedra. Let P be a topological space and  $e_{\alpha}: P_{\alpha} \to P$  topological embeddings where  $P_{\alpha}$  are polyhedra and the  $e_{\alpha}$  are p.l. related

in the sense that  $e_{\alpha}^{-1} \circ e_{\beta}$  is p.l. whenever it is defined; suppose further that P is the identification space of  $\{P_{\alpha}\}$  under  $e_{\alpha}$ . Then provided P is compact it embeds as a polyhedron in  $\mathbb{R}^{n}$  for some n so that each  $e_{\alpha}$  is p.l. (*Hint*: Generalise the method of (2).)

(4) Periodic homeomorphisms. Let  $f: |K| \to |K|$  be periodic (i.e.  $f^n = \text{id}$  for some *n*) then there is a subdivision  $K' \lhd K$  so that  $f: K' \to K'$  is simplicial. (*Hint*: Consider the abstract polyhedron obtained by identifying each  $a \in K$  with f(a)). (Compare examples below 2.17.)

(5) Ball complexes. Suppose that K is a finite collection of balls and write  $|K| = \bigcup \{B|B \in K\}$ , then K is a ball complex if

(i)  $|K| = \text{disjoint} \bigcup \{ \mathring{B} | B \in K \}$ 

(ii) if  $A, B \in K$  then  $A \cap B$  is a union of balls of K.

Show that

(iii)  $\partial A$  is a union of balls of K for each  $A \in K$  and prove a generalisation of 2.18 for ball complexes.

(6) Dual cones. Let K be a simplicial complex and let  $K^{(1)}$  be a first derived and  $A \in K$ . Define the dual cone

$$A^{*}(K) = \{a_{1} a_{2} \dots a_{r} | A < A_{1} < A_{2} < \dots < A_{r} \in K\}$$

and then  $A^*(K) = a \tilde{A}(K)$ , where

$$A^{\tilde{}}(K) = \{a_1 a_2 \dots a_r | A < A_1 < A_2 < \dots < A_r \in K, A \neq A_1\}.$$

Show that  $A^{\tilde{}}(K) \cong (\operatorname{lk}(A, K))^{(1)}$  by pseudo-radial projection from *a*. (7) The dual complex. Let |J| be a manifold. Use (6) and 2.24(4) to show that  $J^* = \{|A^*(J)|, |A^*(\partial J)| | A \in J\}$  is a ball complex.

#### Appendix to Chapter 2. On Convex Cells

## **Lemma A.** $\langle x, C \rangle$ is a subspace.

*Proof.* Let L, L' be lines through x in  $\langle x, C \rangle$  and let  $\pi$  be the plane defined by L and L'. We show that  $\pi \subset \langle x, C \rangle$  and the result follows. Now by definition x is in the interior of arcs ab, a'b' in  $L \cap C$ ,  $L' \cap C$  respectively. Then, by convexity, C contains the quadrilateral aa'bb' in  $\pi$ . Any line through x in  $\pi$  meets this quadrilateral in an interval containing x in its interior and hence lies in  $\langle x, C \rangle$ , as required.



*Remark.* Observe that the proof shows  $x \in \mathring{C}_x$  and  $\dim(C_x) = \dim \langle x, C \rangle$ .

**Lemma B.** Let L be any line in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  meeting C in the arc ab and let x, y be any two interior points of ab then

$$\langle a, C \rangle \subsetneq \langle x, C \rangle = \langle y, C \rangle \supseteq \langle b, C \rangle.$$

*Proof.*  $L \subset \langle x, C \rangle$  and  $\langle y, C \rangle$  by definition. Let  $L' \subset \langle x, C \rangle$  be a line through x; if we show that L'', the line parallel to L' through y, lies in  $\langle y, C \rangle$  then the middle equality follows easily. Now  $x \in \text{int } cd$  with  $cd \subset L \cap C$  and by convexity C contains the triangle bcd which meets L' in an arc with y interior, showing  $L'' \subset \langle y, C \rangle$ , as required.



Fig. 21

Now a similar proof shows that  $\langle a, C \rangle \subset \langle x, C \rangle$  but  $L \notin \langle a, C \rangle$  which establishes the lemma.
Corollary 1.  $C_a \subseteq C_x = C_y \supseteq C_b$ .

**Corollary 2.** If F < C,  $x \in \mathring{F}$  then  $F = C_x$ .

*Proof.*  $F = C_y$  say and  $y \in \mathring{F}$ , then the line  $\langle xy \rangle$  meets F in an arc with both x and y interior so that  $C_x = C_y = F$  by Corollary 1.

**Corollary 3.** If  $F, D < C, \mathring{F} \cap \mathring{D} \neq \emptyset$  then F = D.

*Proof.* Let  $x \in \mathring{F} \cap \mathring{D}$  then  $F = C_x = D$  by Corollary 2.

**Corollary 4.** If D < C and  $x \in D$  then  $C_x = D_x$ .

*Proof.*  $D = C_v$  say and we have

(1)  $\langle x, D \rangle = \langle x, C \rangle \cap \langle y, C \rangle$ 

by definitions. But we also have

(2)  $\langle x, C \rangle \subset \langle y, C \rangle$ 

by Lemma B, since  $y \in \mathring{D}$  and  $x \in D$ , therefore

$$D_x = \langle x, D \rangle \cap D = \langle x, D \rangle \cap \langle y, C \rangle \cap C$$
  
=  $\langle x, C \rangle \cap \langle y, C \rangle \cap C$  by (1)  
=  $\langle x, C \rangle \cap C = C_x$  by (2).

We now prove 2.7.

Part (4). This follows at once from the last corollary since  $F = D_x$  for some x.

*Part (3).* For each  $x \in C$  we have  $x \in \mathring{C}_x$  so  $C = \bigcup \{\mathring{F} | F < C\}$  but this is a disjoint union by Corollary 3. Now  $\dot{C} = C - \mathring{C}$  which proves the second half.

Parts (1) and (2). Part (2) follows from Part (1), since a vertex of F is one of C by Part (4). We prove (1) by induction on n. First of all vertices are isolated since each point  $a \in C$  has a cone neighbourhood aL and there are no vertices in aL-L other than a; so by compactness there are only finitely many vertices. Now  $C \supset v_0, v_1, \ldots, v_r$  by convexity and we have to prove the inclusion the other way. Let  $x \in C$  and ab be the arc  $L \cap C$  containing x for some line L. Then  $a, b \in \dot{C}$  and hence lie in proper faces, for which our induction hypothesis holds. Therefore  $a, b \in v_0 v_1 \ldots v_r$  since the vertices of the faces of C are vertices of C by (4). Then  $ab \subseteq v_0 v_1 \ldots v_r$ , by convexity of the latter and  $x \in v_0 v_1 \ldots v_r$ , as required.

*Part* (5). Let  $x \in (F \cap D)^\circ$  then by Corollary 4  $F_x = C_x = D_x$  so that  $C_x \subset F \cap D$ . But  $\langle x, C \rangle \supset \langle x, F \cap D \rangle$  since  $C \supset F \cap D$  and this implies  $C_x \supset F \cap D$ .

Part (6). By convexity  $C \supset xB$  so let  $y \in C$ ,  $y \neq x$  and continue the arc xy in C as far as possible past y and let the end point be z. Then  $x \notin \langle z, C \rangle$  for otherwise z is in the interior of  $\langle xy \rangle \cap C$ . Therefore  $x \notin C_z$  and  $z \in C_z \subset B$ . We have shown  $xB \supset C$  and it remains to show xB is a cone. But if xyz is an arc with  $y, z \in B$  then  $x \in B_y$ , by definition, so  $x \in B$  which is a contradiction.

# **Chapter 3. Regular Neighbourhoods**

#### **Full Subcomplexes**

Suppose  $L \subset K$  are simplicial complexes. Define the simplicial map  $f_L: K \to I$  by setting  $f_L(v)=0$  for vertices  $v \in L$  and  $f_L(v)=1$  for other vertices. We then have  $L \subset f_L^{-1}(0) \subset K$  and we say that L is *full* in K if  $L = f_L^{-1}(0)$ . We write  $L \in K$  if L is a full subcomplex of K. As immediate consequences of the definition we observe:

**3.1** (a)  $f_L^{-1}(1) \ominus K$ 

(b)  $L \ominus K$  implies  $T \cap L \ominus T$  for any  $T \subset K$ .

We will need the following easy criteria for fullness.

- 3.2 Exercise. Suppose  $L \subset K$  then the following are equivalent:
- (a)  $L \ominus K$
- (b) each simplex of K meets L in a face, possibly empty
- (c) no simplex of K-L meets L in its whole boundary.

**3.3 Lemma.** (a) If  $L \subset K$  then there is a subdivision  $K' \triangleleft K$  such that  $L \ominus K'$ .

(b) If  $L \ominus K$  and  $K' \triangleleft K$  inducing  $L' \triangleleft L$  then  $L' \ominus K'$ .

*Proof.* (a) Form K' by starring each simplex  $A \in K - L$ , which meets L in its whole boundary, at any interior point. The result then follows from 3.2(c) since if  $A \in K' - L$  and  $\dot{A} \subset L$  then  $\dot{A} \subset K$  implying  $A \in K$  which contradicts  $A \in K'$  since A should have been starred (see Fig. 22).



Fig. 22

(b) follows easily from 3.2(b).

**3.4** Exercise.  $L \ominus K$  and  $L' \lhd L$ . Then there is  $K' \lhd K$  with  $L' \subset K'$  and no new vertices in K' - L'.

*Remark.* 3.3 and 3.4 give an alternative proof of 2.17 with a considerably more economical subdivision.

#### **Derived Neighbourhoods**

Suppose  $L \subset K$ . Define the simplicial neighbourhood of L in K

 $N(L, K) = \{A | A \in K, A < B, B \cap |L| \neq \emptyset\}$ 

i.e. the smallest subcomplex of K which is also a topological neighbourhood of L in K. Define the simplicial complement of L in K

 $C(L, K) = \{A | A \in K, A \cap |L| = \emptyset \}.$ 

Then  $C(L, K) = f_L^{-1}(1)$  and  $K = N(L, K) \cup C(L, K)$ . Define  $\dot{N}(L, K) = N(L, K) \cap C(L, K)$  and then:

**3.5**  $\dot{N}(L, K) \ominus N(L, K)$  by 3.1.

A subdivision  $K' \lhd K$  obtained by deriving K away from  $L \cup C(L, K)$  is said to be a *derived of K near L*. Then K' is obtained from K by deriving simplexes which meet |L| but are not in L.

*Exercise.*  $L \ominus K'$  where K' is derived near L.

Now suppose  $L \oplus K$  and K' is a derived of K near L. Then N(L, K') is a *derived neighbourhood* of L in K. Given two deriveds of K near L,  $K_1$  and  $K_2$ , then:

**3.6** the canonical isomorphism  $s: K_1 \to K_2$  carries  $N(L, K_1)$  onto  $N(L, K_2)$  and is the identity on  $L \cup C(L, K)$ .

Next define  $I_{\varepsilon} \lhd I$  by introducing a vertex at  $\varepsilon$  where  $0 < \varepsilon < 1$ . Then the cell complex

$$N_{\varepsilon}(L, K) = \{A \cap f_{L}^{-1}B | A \in K, B < [0, \varepsilon]\}$$

is called the  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood of L in K. If we define a derived K' of K near L by choosing the new vertices on  $f^{-1}(\varepsilon)$  then it is easy to see that  $N(L, K') \triangleleft N_{\varepsilon}(L, K)$  (see Fig. 23).

**3.7 Lemma.** Suppose  $L \oplus K$  and  $K_1 \triangleleft K$  inducing  $L_1 \triangleleft L$ . Then there are deriveds K',  $K'_1$  of K,  $K_1$  near L,  $L_1$  so that  $|N(L, K')| = |N(L_1, K'_1)|$ .

*Proof.* Choose  $\varepsilon > 0$  sufficiently small that  $f_L^{-1}[0, \varepsilon]$  contains no vertices of  $K_1 - L_1$ . Define K' and K'\_1 by choosing all the new vertices on  $f_L^{-1}(\varepsilon)$  and then we have

$$N(L_1, K'_1) \triangleleft N_{\epsilon}(L, K) \triangleright N(L, K').$$



Fig. 23

## **Regular Neighbourhoods**

Now suppose  $X \subset Y$  are polyhedra, with X compact, and that K triangulates a neighbourhood of X in Y with |L| = X where  $L \in K$ , and that K' is a derived of K near L. We then have a derived neighbourhood N(L, K') and the underlying polyhedron N = |N(L, K')| is said to be a *regular neighbourhood* of X in Y. Existence of regular neighbourhoods follows from 2.2 (for finding a compact neighbourhood of X in Y) and 3.3(a). Uniqueness is proved in the next theorem; a stronger result (uniqueness up to isotopy) will be proved later.

**3.8 Theorem.** If  $N_1$ ,  $N_2$  are regular neighbourhoods of X in Y then there is a homeomorphism h:  $Y \rightarrow Y$  which carries  $N_1$  onto  $N_2$  and is the identity on X and outside some compact subset of Y.

*Proof.* By definition  $N_i = |N(L_i, K'_i)|$  for i=1, 2 where  $L_i \in K_i$  and  $K_i$  triangulates a neighbourhood of X in Y. By 2.15 there is a triangulation  $K_0$  of  $|K_1| \cup |K_2|$  which contains subdivisions of both  $K_1$  and  $K_2$ . Then  $L_0 \in K_0$  by 3.3 (b) and  $N(L_0, K'_0)$  is a derived neighbourhood. But by Lemma 3.7 and the canonical uniqueness of derived neighbourhoods (3.6) we have  $|N(L_0, K'_0)| \cong |N(L_i, K'_i)| = N_i$  for i=1, 2 and it only remains to observe that each homeomorphism, being a composition of isomorphisms (3.6), keeps X and the complement of a compact neighbourhood of X in Y fixed and therefore extends by the identity to the required homeomorphism of Y.

**3.9 Corollary.** Suppose  $X \subset Y$  is locally collarable and X is compact then a regular neighbourhood of X in Y is a collar.

*Proof.* By 3.8 and 2.25 it suffices to consider  $L = K \times 0 \subset K \otimes I$  where  $K \otimes I$  denotes  $K \times I$  subdivided as in 2.9. But

$$|N_{\varepsilon}(L, K \otimes I)| = |K| \times [0, \varepsilon].$$

#### **Regular Neighbourhoods in Manifolds**

Now suppose  $X \subset M$  is a compact polyhedron in the manifold M.

**3.10** Proposition. A regular neighbourhood N of X in M is a compact manifold with boundary. If  $X \subset int M$  then  $\partial N = |\dot{N}(L, K')|$ .

**Proof.** It suffices to consider an  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood  $N_{\varepsilon}(L, K)$ . Let  $x \in N$ , then  $x \in \mathring{A}$  for  $A \in K$  and A meets L; choose a vertex  $v \in A \cap L$  and consider  $B_v = |\operatorname{st}(v, K)| \cap N$ , then since  $x \in \operatorname{interior}$  of  $|\operatorname{st}(v, K)|$  in |K| we have  $x \in \operatorname{interior}$  of  $B_v$  in N. But  $B_v = |\operatorname{st}(v, N_{\varepsilon})|$  is a star of v in M and hence a ball. It follows that there is a coordinate neighbourhood for N at x.

For the last part observe that  $N \subset \operatorname{int} M$  and  $\dot{N}$  is the frontier of N in M.

*Exercise.* Use exercise 2.24(3) to give an alternative proof for 3.10 after observing that  $f_L^{-1}[\varepsilon, \tau]$  for  $0 < \varepsilon < \tau < 1$  is a cell complex abstractly isomorphic with  $\dot{N}_{\varepsilon} \times I$ .

We now come to the crucial simplicial neighbourhood theorem (3.11) which enables one to recognise regular neighbourhoods in the absence of a triangulation extending beyond the neighbourhood itself.

**3.11 Theorem** (S.N.T.). Suppose X is a compact polyhedron in the interior of the manifold M and that N is a neighbourhood of X in int M. Then N is a regular neighbourhood if and only if

(i) N is a compact manifold with boundary

(ii) there are triangulations (K, L, J) of  $(N, X, \partial N)$  with  $L \ominus K, K = N(L, K)$ and  $J = \dot{N}(L, K)$ .

**Proof.** If N is a regular neighbourhood then conditions (i) and (ii) follow at once from definition and 3.10. The converse is proved by a short induction on  $n = \dim M$  together with Corollaries 3.12 to 3.14. Assume S.N.T. in dimension n.

**3.12**<sub>n</sub> Corollary. Suppose  $B^n \subset int M^n$  is a ball and  $x \in int B^n$ . Then  $B^n$  is a regular neighbourhood of x in M.

*Proof.* We can take *B* to be an *n*-simplex and define *K* by starring at *x*.

**3.13**<sub>n</sub> Corollary. Suppose  $B^n \subset S^n$  is a ball in a sphere then  $cl(S^n - B^n)$  is a ball.

*Proof.* We can take  $S^n = \dot{A}$  where A is an (n + 1)-simplex. Then int B meets  $\dot{C}$  for some n-simplex C < A; choose  $x \in \dot{C} \cap \text{int } B$  then B and C are both regular neighbourhoods of x in A by 3.12 and so by uniqueness (3.8) we can take B = C. But  $cl(\dot{A} - C) = st(a, \dot{A})$ , where a is the vertex opposite C, is a ball by 2.23.

**3.14**<sub>n+1</sub> Corollary. If  $Q \subset int M$  are (n+1)-manifolds then cl(M-Q) is an (n+1)-manifold.

*Proof.* For  $p \in \partial Q$  we have lk(p, cl(M-Q)) = cl(lk(p, Q) - lk(p, M)) which is a ball by  $3.13_n$ .

Finally to complete the induction we show

 $3.14_{n+1} \Rightarrow S.N.T._{n+1}$ :

Let K' be a derived of K near L and  $N_1 = |N(L, K')|$ . Then K' is also derived near J and  $J \in K$  by 3.5, so that  $C_1 = |N(J, K')|$  is a regular neighbourhood of  $\dot{N}$  in N and hence a collar by 3.9; moreover  $C_1 = C(L, K')$  so that  $C_1 = cl(N - N_1)$ . Let K" be K' derived near L and  $N_2 = |N(L, K'')|$ ,  $C_2 = cl(N_1 - N_2)$  which is a collar for similar reasons. Finally cl(Q - N) is a manifold by 3.14 and hence there is a collar  $C_3$  on N in cl(Q - N) by 2.25 (see Fig. 24).



Fig. 24

Then  $C = C_2 \cup C_1 \cup C_3 \cong \dot{N} \times [0, 3]$  and using a homeomorphism  $\lambda$  of [0, 3] to itself such that  $\lambda | \{0, 3\} = \text{id}$  and  $\lambda(1) = 2$  we have a homeomorphism h of C such that  $h | \partial C = \text{id}$  and  $h(C_2) = C_2 \cup C_1$ . h extends by the identity to a homeomorphism of M which throws  $N_1$  onto N hence showing that N is a regular neighbourhood.

*Exercise.* Generalise the simplicial neighbourhood theorem to the case when M is a polyhedron. In place of condition (i), assume that N is a compact polyhedron with  $\dot{N}$  a collarable subpolyhedron and that cl(M-N) is collarable at  $\dot{N}$  as well.

**3.15** Corollary. Suppose  $B_i^{n-1} \subset \partial B_i^n$  are balls for i = 1, 2 (say  $B_i^{n-1}$  is a face of  $B_i^n$ ) then any homeomorphism of  $B_1^{n-1}$  with  $B_2^{n-1}$  extends to a homeomorphism of  $B_1^n$  with  $B_2^n$ .

*Proof.* By 3.13  $cl(\partial B_i^n - B_i^{n-1})$  is a ball and the result follows by two applications of 1.10; first extend to  $\partial B_1^n$  then to  $B_1^n$  itself.

**3.16 Corollary.** The union of two balls which meet in a common face is a ball.

*Proof.* By 3.15 applied twice, the union is homeomorphic to  $S^0 * B^{n-1} \cong B^n$ .

**3.17 Corollary.** Let M be a manifold with compact boundary then a collar on  $\partial M$  in M is a regular neighbourhood.

*Proof.* Consider the double of M, DM which is obtained by gluing a copy  $M_0$  of M to M along  $\partial M$ . Then  $M_0 \subset \operatorname{int} DM$  and we can apply the S.N.T. But the collar determines a neighbourhood of  $M_0$  in DMwhich can be triangulated by  $J \cup K \otimes I$  where  $(M_0, \partial M) = (|J|, |K \times 0|)$ ; by the S.N.T. this is a regular neighbourhood and restricting to M we see that the collar is a regular neighbourhood of  $\partial M$  in M.

3.18 Corollary (Regular neighbourhood collaring theorem). Suppose  $N_1 \subset \operatorname{int} N_2$  are two regular neighbourhoods of X in  $\operatorname{int} M$ . Then  $\operatorname{cl}(N_2 - N_1) \cong \dot{N_1} \times I$ .

*Proof.* There is a regular neighbourhood  $N'_1$  of X in M so that  $cl(N_2 - N'_1)$  is a collar, by the proof of the S.N.T. Then, by the S.N.T.,  $N_1$  and  $N'_1$  are both regular neighbourhoods of X in int  $N_2$  and hence there is a homeomorphism of int  $N_2$ , which is the identity outside a compact set, carrying  $N_1$  to  $N'_1$ . This extends by the identity to  $N_2$  and hence carries  $cl(N_2 - N_1)$  onto  $cl(N_2 - N'_1)$ .

**3.19 Corollary** (Combinatorial annulus theorem). Given n-balls A and B with  $A \subset \operatorname{int} B$  then  $\operatorname{cl}(B-A) \cong S^{n-1} \times I$ .

*Proof.* By 3.12 A and B are both regular neighbourhoods of  $x \in int A$  in any manifold M with  $B \subset int M$ .

**3.20** Exercise. Use 3.19 to prove that  $\mathbb{R}^n \cong S^n$ —one point (Exercise 1.9(5)) by writing both  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and  $S^n$ —point as a union of nested *n*-balls.

## Isotopy Uniqueness of Regular Neighbourhoods

The idea of sliding Y over itself gives rise to the notion of "an isotopy of Y". Composing with an embedding of X in Y we have an "ambient isotopy of X in Y". An "isotopy of X in Y" corresponds to the idea of sliding X about in Y without moving Y. The problem of determining when an isotopy of X in Y is ambient (i.e. when a given movement of X in Y can be realised by moving Y) is discussed in the next chapter.

#### 3.21 Definitions

(1) A map  $F: X \times I \to Y \times I$  is level-preserving if  $F(X \times t) \subset Y \times t$  for each  $t \in I$ . We can then define  $F_t: X \to Y$  by  $F(x, t) = (F_t(x), t)$ .

(2) An isotopy of Y is a level preserving homeomorphism  $H: Y \times I \rightarrow Y \times I$  such that  $H_0 = id$ . We say that  $H_1$  is the finishing homeomorphism of the isotopy and that  $H_1$  is ambient isotopic to the identity.

(3) An isotopy of X in Y is a level-preserving embedding  $F: X \times I \to Y \times I$ and we say that the embeddings  $F_0$  and  $F_1$  are isotopic. We say that H covers F if  $F = H \circ (F_0 \times id)$  in other words if



commutes.

(4) An ambient isotopy is an isotopy which is covered by some isotopy of Y and we say  $F_0$ ,  $F_1$  are ambient isotopic. (This extends the usage of "ambient" in (2).) We also say that the subsets  $F_0(X)$  and  $F_1(X)$  are ambient isotopic.

(5) An isotopy, ambient isotopy, etc., fixes a subset  $V \subset X$  if  $F|V \times I = F_0 \times id|V \times I$  and we say F has support in U, or is supported by U, if F fixes X - U. We also say F is mod V if F fixes V.

*Remark.* An isotopy between homeomorphisms is ambient if and only if it is itself a homeomorphism.

*Exercise.* "Isotopy" and "ambient isotopy" are equivalence relations on the set of embeddings of X in Y.

**3.22** Proposition. (i) Let  $B^n$ ,  $C^n$  be balls and  $h_0, h_1: B^n \to C^n$  homeomorphisms which agree on  $\dot{B}^n$ , then  $h_0, h_1$  are ambient isotopic mod  $\dot{B}^n$ .

(ii) Suppose M is a manifold with compact boundary, then any isotopy of  $\partial M$  extends to one of M with support in a collar of  $\partial M$ .

*Proof.* (i) (Alexander trick). We can take  $B^n = C^n = I^n$  and construct the required homeomorphism H of  $I^n \times I$  as follows.

$$H_0 = h_0, \qquad H_1 = h_1$$
$$H | \dot{I}^n \times I = (h_0 | I^n) \times \text{id}$$
$$H(x) = x \qquad \text{where } x = (0, \frac{1}{2}) \in I^n \times I$$

and  $H|I^n \times I$  is defined by conical extension from x (see Fig. 25).



Fig. 25

(ii) Choose a collar  $c: \partial M \times I \to M$  and extend H to im(c) by

$$H'_t(x,s) = \begin{cases} (H_{t-s}(x),s) & \text{for } s \leq t \\ (x,s) & \text{for } s \geq t \end{cases}$$

where s is the coordinate for the collar and t the coordinate for the isotopy. Extend to the rest of M by the identity.

**3.23** Corollary. Let K be a cell complex and  $f: |K| \rightarrow |K|$  a homeomorphism which carries each cell of K into itself. Then f is ambient isotopic to the identity keeping fixed any subcomplex L on which f is already the identity.

*Proof.* Isotope f | C for  $C \in K$  to the identity by induction on dimension of C using 3.22(i); extend each isotopy to higher dimensional cells by repeated use of 3.22(ii) with M a ball.

**3.24 Regular neighborhood theorem.** Suppose  $N_1$  and  $N_2$  are regular neighbourhoods of X in Y then there is an isotopy H of Y fixed on X and of compact support carrying  $N_1$  onto  $N_2$   $(H_1(N_1)=N_2)$ . Moreover if Y is a manifold and  $X \subset \operatorname{int} Y$  then we can assume further that H is fixed on any regular neighbourhood  $N \subset (\operatorname{int} N_1 \cap \operatorname{int} N_2)$  and outside any open neighbourhood U of  $N_1 \cup N_2$ .

*Proof.* For the first part observe that the uniqueness Theorem 3.9 provided a homeomorphism which was a composition of isomorphisms of deriveds and the required isotopy is provided by 3.23. For the second

half we have  $C_i = cl(N_i - N)$  a collar for i = 1, 2 by 3.18 and hence  $C_i$  is a regular neighbourhood of N in U - int N by 3.17. So by the first part there is an isotopy of U - int N of compact support and fixed on N carrying  $C_1$  to  $C_2$ ; extending by the identity gives the required isotopy of M.

*Exercise.* Prove the stronger part of 3.24 for polyhedra in polyhedra using the S.N.T. for polyhedra.

#### Collapsing

We now turn to the classical treatment of regular neighbourhoods based on collapsing. For most applications the treatment we have given so far, based on the simplicial neighbourhood theorem, is all that is needed (for instance the final sections of this chapter); however collapsing is a very useful tool and has strong connections with torsion (see Appendix B).

Definition. Suppose  $X \supset Y$  are polyhedra and that  $X = Y \cup B^n$  and  $Y \cap B^n = a$  face  $B^{n-1}$ . Then we say that there is an elementary collapse of X on Y, and write  $X \cong Y$ . The collapse is across  $B^n$  onto  $B^{n-1}$  from the complementary face  $C^{n-1} = cl(\partial B^n - B^{n-1})$ , see Fig. 26.



Fig. 26

We say X collapses on Y and write  $X \searrow Y$  if there is a sequence of elementary collapses  $X = X_0 \boxtimes X_1 \boxtimes \cdots \boxtimes X_n = Y$ . If Y is a point we say X is collapsible and write  $X \searrow 0$ .

#### **Remarks on Simple Homotopy Type**

If  $X \searrow Y$  then  $Y \subset X$  is a homotopy equivalence since there is a deformation retraction  $r: X \to Y$  given by deforming each of the balls  $B^n$  onto the face  $B^{n-1}$ . Therefore a sequence of collapses and their inverses

$$X_0 \searrow X_1 \swarrow X_2 \searrow X_3 \checkmark \cdots \searrow X_n$$

40

determines a homotopy equivalence  $X_0 \to X_n$  which is called a *simple* homotopy equivalence. Simple homotopy equivalence is then an equivalence relation on polyhedra and the equivalence classes are called *simple homotopy types*. For example the house with two rooms (see Chapter 1 for a picture) has the simple homotopy type of a point – first thicken all the walls in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  (this is the inverse of a collapse) and observe that the result is a 3-ball, which collapses in 3 steps. In general a homotopy equivalence  $h: X \to Y$  determines a torsion element  $\tau(h) \in Wh(\pi_1(X))$  which is zero if and only if h is simple; see Appendix B.

## Examples of collapses

(1)  $B^n$  collapses in *n* steps since it collapses on  $B^{n-1}$  which collapses inductively in (n-1) steps.

(2) Let X be compact and C(X) denote the cone on X, then  $C(X) \searrow 0$ . For write X = |K| and collapse C(A) from A for  $A \in K$  inductively in order of decreasing dimension. A similar proof shows  $C(X) \searrow C(X_0)$  for any  $X_0 \subset X$ .

(3) If  $X \searrow 0$  then  $C(X) \searrow X$  for if  $X \boxtimes Y$  then  $C(X) \boxtimes C(Y) \cup X$  by collapsing  $C(B^n)$  from  $C(C^{n-1})$ .

(4) If X is compact and  $Y \searrow Y_0$  then  $X \times Y \searrow X \times Y_0$ . For write X = |K| and assume without loss of generality that  $Y \bowtie Y_0$  across  $B^n$  from  $C^{n-1}$ ; then  $X \times Y \searrow X \times Y_0$  by inductively collapsing  $A \times B^n$  from  $A \times C^{n-1}$  for  $A \in K$ .

(5) Trails. Let  $X \searrow Y$  and suppose  $P \subset X$  is a compact polyhedron then there is a compact polyhedron  $P_+ \supset P$  such that  $X \searrow P_+ \cup Y$  and  $\dim P_+ \leq \dim P + 1$  called a *trail* of P under the collapse.  $P_+$  is constructed inductively as follows. Suppose  $X_i \boxtimes X_{i+1}$  across  $B^n$  onto  $B^{n-1}$  and  $P_i$ has been constructed. Choose a homeomorphism  $h: (B^n, B^{n-1}) \rightarrow$  $(B^{n-1} \times I, B^{n-1} \times 0)$  by 3.15 and define  $P_{i+1} = P_i \cup h^{-1}$  (shadow  $h(P_i \cap B^n)$ ), where shadow(T) for  $T \subset B^{n-1} \times I$  is defined by  $(x, t) \in$  shadow(T) if and only if  $(x, s) \in T$  for some  $s \geq t$ . Then

dim  $P_{i+1} \leq \dim P_i + 1$  and dim  $P_{i+1} \cap X_{i+1} \leq \dim P_i$ ;

moreover  $X_i \cup P_i \searrow X_{i+1} \cup P_{i+1}$  since  $B^{n-1} \times I \searrow B^{n-1} \times 0 \cup \text{shadow}(T)$ by the proof of (4).

## Shelling

Now suppose that  $M_1 \subset M$  are *n*-manifolds and  $M \cong M_1$  across  $B^n$  from  $C^{n-1}$  onto  $B^{n-1}$ . Then we must have  $B^{n-1} \subset \partial M_1$  and  $C^{n-1} \subset \partial M$ . A collapse of this type is an *elementary shelling* and a sequence of such collapses is a shelling.

**3.25** Lemma. If M shells to  $M_1$  then there is a homeomorphism h:  $M \rightarrow M_1$  which is the identity outside an arbitrary neighbourhood of  $M - M_1$ .

*Proof.* It is sufficient to prove this for an elementary shelling. Let  $M = M_1 \cup B^n$ ,  $M_1 \cap B^n = B^{n-1}$ . Choose a collar c on  $\partial M_1$  in  $M_1$  then  $c(B^{n-1} \times I)$  is a ball  $D^n$  and  $B^n$  and  $D^n$  meet in the common face  $B^{n-1}$ . By a suitable choice of c we may suppose that  $D^n$  is in the neighbourhood. Let  $D^{n-1}$  be the complementary face of  $D^n$ . Then id  $|D^{n-1}|$  extends to a homeomorphism of  $B^n \cup D^n$  with  $D^n$  by 3.15. This extends by the identity to the required homeomorphism of M with  $M_1$ .



Fig. 27

The connection between collapsing and regular neighbourhoods is contained in the next theorem. We postpone the proof until after the corollaries.

**3.26** Theorem. Suppose  $X \subset M$  is a compact polyhedron and that  $X \searrow Y$ . Then a regular neighbourhood of X in M shells to a regular neighbourhood of Y in M.

**3.27** Corollary. If  $X \searrow 0$  then a regular neighbourhood of X is a ball.

Proof. The regular neighbourhood of a point is a ball.

3.28 Corollary. A collapsible manifold is a ball.

*Proof.* It is a regular neighbourhood of itself in itself and is therefore a ball by 3.27.

**3.29** Corollary. If  $X \subset int M$  and  $X \searrow Y$  then a regular neighbourhood of X is a regular neighbourhood of Y.

*Proof.* They are homeomorphic mod Y by 3.25 and so the result follows from the S.N.T.

**3.30** Corollary (Collapsing criterion for regular neighbourhoods). Let N be a neighbourhood of X in int M. Then N is regular if and only if

(i) N is a compact manifold with boundary,

(ii)  $N \searrow X$ .

*Proof.* Suppose N is regular then we have to prove (ii). Take N to be an  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood and collapse each cell  $A \cap f^{-1}[0, \varepsilon]$  from the face  $A \cap f^{-1}(\varepsilon)$ , for  $A \in K$ , in order of decreasing dimension.

Conversely, suppose  $N \searrow X$  and let  $N_1$  be a regular neighbourhood of N in int M, then  $N_1$  is a regular neighbourhood of X by 3.28 and  $C_1 = cl(N_1 - N)$  is a collar by 3.9. Choose another regular neighbourhood N' of X in int  $N_1$  then  $C_2 = cl(N_1 - N')$  is a collar by 3.18. Then  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  are both regular neighbourhoods of  $\dot{N_1}$  in  $N_1 - X$  and the uniqueness theorem gives a homeomorphism of  $N_1 \mod X$  throwing  $C_1$  onto  $C_2$ and hence N onto N' proving that N is regular, as required.

Proof of Theorem 3.25. Suppose the result true if the collapses are across balls of dimension  $\langle n$ . By induction on the length of the collapse we may assume  $X \leq Y$ , and that  $X = Y \cup B^{n-1} \times I$  with  $B^{n-1} \times I \cap Y = B^{n-1} \times 0$ . Now choose triangulations J, K, L of M, X, Y so that  $L \in K \in J$ . Now subdivide K further so that the projection  $p: B^{n-1} \times I \to I$  is simplicial with respect to some linear triangulation of I, having vertices  $0 = \varepsilon_0 < \varepsilon_1 < \varepsilon_2 < \cdots < \varepsilon_q = 1$ ; see Fig. 28.



Fig. 28

By 3.4 we can extend this triangulation to a subdivision of J without destroying the fullness properties. Now the collapse  $X \cong Y$  decomposes into q collapses across the balls  $p^{-1}[\varepsilon_i, \varepsilon_{i+1}]$ , so that without loss of generality we may assume  $L \in K \in J$  and K has no vertices in  $B^{n-1} \times I - B^{n-1} \times \dot{I}$  (i.e. q = 1). Now choose a first derived subdivision of J so that simplexes which meet  $p^{-1} \mathring{I}$  are derived along  $p^{-1}(\frac{1}{2})$ , see Fig. 29.

Now it is easy to see that  $N(K', J') = N(L', J') \cup N(L'_1, J')$  where  $L_1$  is the subcomplex triangulating  $B^{n-1} \times 1$ . From Corollary 3.27 and induction we see that  $N(L'_1, J')$  is an *m*-ball. We claim that  $W = N(L', J') \cap$  $N(L'_1, J')$  is a regular neighbourhood of  $p^{-1}(\frac{1}{2})$  in  $N(L'_1, J')$  and is there-



Fig. 29

fore an (m-1)-ball, again by 3.27 and induction. The theorem then follows.

To see the claim, consider the simplicial map  $f: J \to \Delta^2$  defined by  $f(L_1)=0$ , f(L)=1 and f (other vertices)=2. Here  $\Delta^2$  is a 2-simplex with vertices  $\{0, 1, 2\}$ . Derive  $\Delta^2$  as shown in Fig. 30; then we can assume that J' was chosen so that  $f: J' \to (\Delta^2)'$  is simplicial. Then  $W = f^{-1}(bc)$ , and W is obtained from  $f^{-1}(ac)$  by deriving on  $f^{-1}(b)$ . It follows that W is a regular neighbourhood, as required.



# Orientation

In this section we use regular neighbourhood theory to give a geometric treatment of orientation. It is convenient to use a result from algebraic topology (in fact this dependence on algebraic topology can be eliminated, see 3.35(7)). Let  $r_n: I^n \to I^n$  be reflection in the  $x_1$ -direction i.e.

$$r_n(x_1, \ldots, x_n) = (-x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n).$$

3.31 (See Appendix A).  $r_n: \partial I^n \to \partial I^n$  is not homotopic to the identity.

**3.32** Theorem. Let  $h: \partial I^n \to \partial I^n$  be a homeomorphism. Then h is ambient isotopic to one of id or  $r_n$ .

Combining the last two results we see that there are exactly two ambient isotopy classes of homeomorphisms of an n-sphere. To prove the theorem we need to know how to move points around in a manifold:

**3.33 Lemma** (homogeneity of manifolds). Let M be connected and  $p, q \in int M$  then there is an isotopy of  $M \mod \partial M$  carrying p to q.

**Proof.** If  $M = I^n$  then the cone construction provides a homeomorphism of  $M \mod \partial M$  carrying p to q and the result follows from 3.22(i). For the general case let U be the set of points in  $\operatorname{int} M$  which can be reached from p by an isotopy of  $M \mod \partial M$ . Since each point in int M has a ball neighbourhood, U is open in M. For similar reasons int M - U is open in M. Therefore  $U = \operatorname{int} M$ .

Proof of Theorem 3.32. The proof is by induction on *n*. The result is obvious for n=1. Let  $F < I^n$  be the face  $x_n = 1$  and  $a \in \mathring{F}$ . Then we can assume h(a) = a by 3.33 and that h(F) = F by the regular neighbourhood theorem. Now *F* is a translate of  $I^{n-1}$  and  $h \mid \partial F$  is ambient isotopic to either id or  $r_{n-1}$  by induction. This isotopy extends to  $\partial I^n$  by two applications of 3.22(ii) and the result now follows by 3.22(i) applied to each of *F*,  $cl(\partial I^n - F)$ .

**3.34** Disc theorem. Let M be a connected n-manifold and  $h_1, h_2: I^n \rightarrow \text{int } M$  embeddings. Then  $h_1$  is ambient isotopic to one of  $h_2$  or  $h_2 \circ r_n$ .

*Proof.* By 3.33 we may assume that  $h_1(0) = h_2(0)$  and, by the regular neighbourhood theorem, that  $h_1(I^n) = h_2(I^n)$ . Then  $h_2^{-1} \circ h_1 |\partial I^n$  is ambient isotopic to one of id or  $r_n$  by 3.32. Composing with  $h_2$  gives an ambient isotopy of  $h_1(\partial I^n)$  which extends to M by two applications of 3.22(i).  $h_1$  now agrees with one of  $h_2$  or  $h_2 \circ r_n$  on  $\partial I^n$  and the result follows from 3.22(i).

The disc theorem shows that in a connected manifold M there are either one or two ambient isotopy classes of embeddings of  $I^n$  in int M, and for n > 1 we define  $M^n$  to be *orientable* if there are two classes and *non-orientable* if there is only one. For n=0, a connected 0-manifold (a point) is regarded by convention as having two orientations + and -. An *orientation* for an orientable manifold M is a choice of isotopy class and if  $h: I^n \to int M$  is in this class then we say h orients M. An oriented manifold is a manifold with a choice of orientation. If  $g: M \to M$  is a homeomorphism then g is orientation-preserving if  $g \circ h$  is isotopic to h for each  $h: I^n \to M$ ; otherwise h is orientation-reversing.

#### 3.35 Examples and remarks

(1) To show that M is non-orientable it is sufficient to find one embedding  $h: I^n \to \operatorname{int} M^n$  such that h is ambient isotopic to  $h \circ r_n$ , for by the disc theorem any embedding is isotopic to one of h or  $h \circ r_n$ .

(2) Spheres are orientable for if the identity on  $F < \dot{I}^n$  is ambient isotopic to  $r_n | F$  then by 3.22(i) applied to  $cl(\dot{I}^n - F)$  we have  $id |\partial I^n$  isotopic to  $r_n |\partial I^n$  contradicting 3.31. The inclusion  $F \subset \dot{I}^n$  defines a standard orientation for  $\dot{I}^n$ .

(3) A homeomorphism of  $\partial I^n$  is isotopic to the identity if and only if it preserves orientation. For  $r_n$  clearly reverses it.

(4) If  $M^n$  is orientable and  $M_0^n \subset M^n$  then  $M_0$  is orientable, moreover any orientation of M restricts to one of  $M_0$  by considering those embeddings whose images lie in int  $M_0$ . For example,  $I^n$  has a standard orientation by (2).

(5) If  $M = U \cup V$ , where U and V are open with  $U \cap V \neq \emptyset$ , and U and V are oriented so that the restricted orientations agree on  $U \cap V$ , then M is oriented by the orientations of U and V. We leave the proof as an exercise, to show that no embedding is isotopic to its reflection, split the isotopy into parts each of which takes place in either U or V. (6) If M is orientable then so is  $\partial M$  for consider  $h: I^{n-1} \to \partial M$ . Then using a collar of  $\partial M$  we can define  $\bar{h}: I^n \to \operatorname{int} M$  by

$$\bar{h}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = c\left(h(x_1, \dots, x_{n-1}), \frac{3+x_n}{4}\right).$$

In other words,  $\tilde{h}$  is h pushed in along c.



Then if h is ambient isotopic to  $h \circ r_{n-1}$  then  $\bar{h}$  is ambient isotopic to  $\bar{h} \circ r_n$  by taking the product isotopy on im(c) and extending to M by 3.22(ii).

If u is an orientation for M then one of  $\bar{h}$  or  $\overline{h \circ r_{n-1}} \in u$  and the class of h such that  $\bar{h} \in u$  is the *induced* orientation for  $\partial M$ . For n=1 there is only one choice for  $\tilde{h}$  and induced orientation on  $\partial M$  is given by the convention that orientation is + if and only if  $\bar{h} \in u$ .

(7) We have used 3.31 essentially only once in our treatment of orientation (to show that spheres and balls are orientable). However there is a direct proof of this fact provided by remark (5) above and exercise (6) below. Thus orientation makes sense without any appeal to algebraic results.

#### Exercises

(1) Prove that if M is a manifold with boundary and  $h_1, h_2: (I^{n-1} \times I, I^{n-1} \times 0) \to (M, \partial M)$  are two embeddings, then  $h_1$  is ambient isotopic to one of  $h_2$  or  $h_2 \circ (r_{n-1} \times id)$ .

*Hint*: Examine the proof of 3.32 and relativise each step (see Chapter 4 for more general methods).

(2) Deduce from (1) that the induced orientation for  $\partial M$  is independent of the collar used, since  $\bar{h}$  is determined by  $\tilde{h}: I^{n-1} \times I \to M$  defined by  $\tilde{h}(x,t) = c(hx,t)$ .

(3) Define a local orientation at  $x \in \mathring{M}$  to be an orientation for a coordinate neighbourhood of x. Use the proof of 3.33 to show how to "transport" a local orientation along an  $\operatorname{arc} \alpha$  in M.

(4) Prove that the end result of (3) depends only on the homotopy class of  $\alpha$  rel endpoints. Then define a homomorphism  $w: \pi_1(M) \to \mathbb{Z}_2$  by transporting an orientation around a loop and comparing the result with the original orientation. Deduce that a simply-connected manifold is orientable.

(5) Show that M is orientable if and only if  $M \times \mathbb{R}^1$  is orientable.

Hint: Cover M by balls so that orientations agree on overlaps.

(6) Give a proof that  $\mathbb{R}^n$  is orientable as follows:

(a)  $GL(p, \mathbb{R})$  has at least two path components detected by sign of determinant.

(b) Let  $f: I^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$  be an embedding and suppose that  $I^n$  is triangulated so that f is linear on simplexes. Consider the differential of f on each *n*-simplex of  $I^n$  and show that the sign of det(df) does not alter at an (n-1)-simplex.

(c) Deduce the result by considering an isotopy  $I^n \times I \to \mathbb{R}^n \times I$  as an embedding of  $I^{n+1}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$ .

## **Connected Sums**

Suppose  $M_1$ ,  $M_2$  are connected oriented *n*-manifolds. We form an oriented *n*-manifold  $M_1 \# M_2$  called the connected sum of  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  as follows.

Choose embeddings  $h_i: I^n \to M_i$  i = 1, 2 in the given orientation classes. Then  $M_1 \# M_2$  is formed by identifying  $M_1 - h_1$  (int  $I^n$ ) with  $M_2 - h_2$  (int  $I^n$ ) along  $h_1(I^n)$  and  $h_2(I^n)$  by the homeomorphism  $h = h_2 \circ r_n \circ h_1^{-1} \colon h_1 I^n \to h_2 I^n$ . It is easy to see that  $M_1 \# M_2$  is a manifold which could also have been obtained by identifying collars on  $h_i(I^n)$  with one of the directions reversed. Then the orientations of  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  agree on the overlap, since h reverses orientation, and we have a well defined orientation on  $M_1 \# M_2$  by 3.35(5). The disc theorem shows that this construction is independent of the choice of the embeddings  $h_i$ .

# 3.36 Exercises

(1) Show that if one of  $M_1$  or  $M_2$  is not orientable then there is a well defined connected sum  $M_1 # M_2$  which is not orientable.

(2) Show that # is associative and commutative up to homeomorphism and that  $S^n$  is a unit.

We now give an application of connected sums.

# **Schönflies** Conjecture

Suppose  $S^{n-1} \subset S^n$  are spheres, then the closures of the components of  $S^n - S^{n-1}$  are *n*-balls.

*Remark.* It follows from duality (see Appendix A) that  $S^n - S^{n-1}$  has precisely two components. However, an elementary proof can be given. We leave this to the reader.

Now let T be the closure of a component; then we have two problems:

- (1) Is T a manifold?
- (2) Given that T is a manifold, is T a ball?

From 3.14, T is a manifold if and only if the other closure is a manifold and looking at the link of a point in  $S^{n-1}$  we see that (1) is equivalent to the Schönflies conjecture in dimension n-1. To avoid this inductive dependence we define  $S^{n-1} \subset S^n$  to be *locally flat* if the closures of the components are manifolds (we have more general notions of local flatness in Chapter 4) and restate the problem as follows.

3.37 Problem. Suppose  $S^{n-1} \subset S^n$  is locally flat then are the closures of the components of  $S^n - S^{n-1}$  *n*-balls?

In this form the answer is known to be "yes" for  $n \neq 4$ . For  $n \leq 3$  there is a direct geometrical argument (see bibliography) and for  $n \geq 5$  it follows from the Poincaré theorem, since  $T \cup B^n$  is a homotopy sphere

(in fact a topological sphere by 3.39 below). This leaves the case n=4 still unsolved at the time of writing. This shows, by the inductive proof sketched above, that the Schönflies conjecture is true for  $n \leq 3$  but unsolved for  $n \geq 4$  and that the only obstruction to the solution of the conjecture lies in dimension 4.

We give a partial solution to 3.37:

**3.38 Weak Schönflies theorem.** Let T be the closure of a component of the complement of a locally flat  $S^{n-1}$  in  $S^n$  and let  $p \in int T$ . Then  $T-p \cong S^{n-1} \times \mathbb{R}_+$ .

**3.39** Corollary. *T* is topologically an n-ball.

*Proof.* Identify  $S^{n-1} \times \mathbb{R}_+$  with  $I^n - 0$  and define the topological homeomorphism  $h: T \to I^n$  to be the given homeomorphism on T - p and define h(p) = 0.

Proof of 3.38. Choose  $q \in S^n - T$  then by 3.20 we can identify  $S^n - q$  with  $\mathbb{R}^n$  and we have  $T \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ . Now let  $\varepsilon T$  be T shrunk linearly towards p by a factor  $\varepsilon > 0$  chosen so small that  $\varepsilon T \subset int T$ . We will show that  $cl(T - \varepsilon T)$  is a collar and then

$$T - p = \operatorname{cl}(T - \varepsilon T) \cup \operatorname{cl}(\varepsilon T - \varepsilon^2 T) \cup \cdots$$
$$\cong S^{n-1} \times [0, 1] \cup S^{n-1} \times [1, 2] \cup \cdots$$
$$= S^{n-1} \times \mathbb{R}_+$$

as required.



Fig. 32

Now define manifolds  $M_1 = B_1^n \cup T$ ,  $M_2 = T' \cup B_2^n$ , and  $W = B_1^n \cup cl(T - \varepsilon T) \cup B_3^n$ , where  $\partial B_1$  is identified with  $\partial T$ ,  $\partial B_2$  with  $\partial T'$  and  $\partial B_3$  with  $\partial \varepsilon T$ . Then clearly

$$M_1 \# M_2 = S^n.$$

Now  $W # M_1$  can be thought of as removing  $B_3^n$  and replacing by T. But T and  $\varepsilon T$  are canonically homeomorphic. So  $W # M_1$  can also be thought of as replacing  $B_3^n$  by  $\varepsilon T$  this yields  $B_1^n \cup T$  i.e.  $M_1$ . We have proved

$$W \# M_1 = M_1$$
.

Add  $M_2$  to both sides:

$$(W \# M_1) \# M_2 = M_1 \# M_2.$$

Then by exercise 3.36 we have  $W # S^n = S^n$ , which implies  $W = S^n$ . It follows that  $cl(T - \varepsilon T)$  is obtained from  $S^n$  by removing disjoint balls and hence is a collar by 3.13 and 3.19.

# Chapter 4. Pairs of Polyhedra and Isotopies

In this chapter we recast the last two chapters for pairs of polyhedra and manifolds. The proofs of the extended results will often be essentially the same as those of the original results and in this case we will refer back and merely sketch the changes; if the changes are obvious the proof will be omitted. We give two applications to isotopies. The first concerns "cellular moves" and will be used in the next chapter to prove basic unknotting theorems. The second application is to the general isotopy extension theorem, and is given in the final section of the chapter; this theorem will not be used again in the book and this section may be omitted or read at any later stage if the reader wishes.

#### Definitions

A pair of polyhedra  $(P, P_0)$  is a polyhedron P with a subpolyhedron  $P_0 \,\subset \, P$ . A map of pairs  $f: (P, P_0) \to (Q, Q_0)$  is a (p.l.) map  $f: P \to Q$  such that  $f(P_0) \subset Q_0$ . If P and  $P_0$  are manifolds of dimension q and n respectively then  $(P, P_0)$  is a (q, n)-manifold pair denoted (Q, M),  $(Q^q, Q^n)$ ,  $Q^{q,n}$  etc. The codimension of  $Q^{q,n}$  is q-n. If  $Q^q$  and  $Q^n$  are both spheres then  $Q^{q,n}$  is a sphere pair and if both are balls then it is a ball pair. A manifold pair  $Q^{q,n}$  is a comparison of  $Q^{q,n} = \partial Q^n$ , and then the boundary  $(\partial Q^q, \partial Q^n)$  or  $\partial Q^{q,n}$  is a (q-1, n-1)-manifold pair. A proper manifold pair is locally flat if each point  $p \in Q^n$  has a neighbourhood in  $Q^{q,n}$  homeomorphic as a pair with an open set in  $\mathbb{R}^{q,n}_+$ , where  $\mathbb{R}^{q,n}_+$  is the pair  $\mathbb{R}^n_+ \times 0 \subset \mathbb{R}^q_+$ , and then it is clear that  $\partial Q^{q,n}$  is also locally flat. The standard (q, n)-ball pair is  $I^{q,n} = (I^q, I^n \times 0)$  and  $\partial I^{q+1,n+1}$  is the standard (q, n)-sphere pair. A ball or sphere pair is unknotted if it is homeomorphic with the appropriate standard pair.

#### Links and Stars

Joins and cones of pairs are defined in the obvious way. A star pair of  $a \in P_0$  is a pair  $(N, N_0)$  of stars in  $(P, P_0)$  such that  $(N, N_0)$  is a cone pair  $(aL, aL_0)$  and then  $(L, L_0)$  is a link pair. Existence of star and link pairs follows from 1.2 (choose the smaller  $\varepsilon$ ) and p.l. invariance from the proof of 2.19 which provides a homeomorphism of pairs. As corollaries we have

4.1 Corollary (cf. 2.20). A proper cell pair is an unknotted ball pair.

*Proof.* Let  $C^{q,n}$  be the cell pair and  $a \in \mathring{C}^n$ . Without loss assume  $C^{q,n} \subset \mathbb{R}^{q,n}$ . Choose a cone  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood  $(N, N_0) = (aL, aL_0)$  then  $C^{q,n}$  and  $(N, N_0)$  are both star pairs of a in  $C^{q,n}$ , while the latter pair is linearly homeomorphic to the standard pair.

**4.2 Corollary** (cf. 2.21(1)). Suppose  $J \supset J_0$  are simplicial complexes then  $(|J|, |J_0|)$  is a proper locally unknotted manifold pair if and only if  $(|\operatorname{lk}(x, J)|, |\operatorname{lk}(x, J_0)|)$  is an unknotted ball or sphere pair for each vertex  $x \in J$ .

## 4.3 Proposition (cf. 2.23). Joins of sphere and ball pairs obey the rules

$$B^{p,q} * B^{p',q'} = B^{p+p'+1,q+q'+1}$$
  

$$B^{p,q} * S^{p',q'} = B^{p+p'+1,q+q'+1}$$
  

$$S^{p,q} * S^{p',q'} = S^{p+p'+1,q+q'+1}$$

(where q = -1 or q' = -1 means the pair  $(B^p, \emptyset)$  etc.). Moreover if both pairs on the left hand side are unknotted then so is the pair on the right hand side.

*Proof.* The first half follows by a double application of 2.23. For the second half use the proof of 2.23 and 4.1.

*Exercise.* Prove the converse to the second half of 4.3 by looking at a link and using induction.

**4.4 Proposition** (cf. 1.10). A homeomorphism between the boundaries of unknotted ball pairs extends to the interiors. Moreover we can choose the extension to agree with any given extension on the subball.

*Proof.* The first half follows from the cone construction. For the second half let  $h: B^{p,q} \to D^{p,q}$  be the extension given by the first half and  $g: B^q \to D^q$  the given extension on the subballs. Consider  $t_1 = g \circ h_1^{-1}: D^q \to D^q$ , where  $h_1 = h | D^q$ , then since g and  $h_1$  agree on  $\dot{D}^q$  we have  $t_1 | \dot{D}^q = id$ . Now write  $D^p = D^q * S^{p-q-1}$  by 4.3 and use the join construction with  $id | S^{p-q-1}$  to extend  $t_1$  to  $t: D^{p,q} \to D^{p,q}$  with  $t | \dot{D}^p = id$ . Then  $t \circ h: B^{p,q} \to D^{p,q}$  is the required extension.

Remark. For the rest of this section we will deal only with proper locally flat manifold pairs and "manifold pair" will mean proper locally flat manifold pair. From 4.2 we see that the problem of whether an arbitrary proper pair is locally flat depends on whether ball and sphere pairs unknot. This in turn depends on codimension. For codimension 1 this is the unsolved Schönflies conjecture (cf. 3.38). In codimension 2 knots are easily constructed by suspending a knotted arc in  $B^3$ . However in codimension  $\ge 3$  all pairs unknot by a general unknotting theorem (which we will prove in Chapter 7) hence all proper pairs of codimension  $\ge 3$  are automatically locally flat.

#### Collars

We generalise the treatment of Chapter 2 to pairs. Let

$$\begin{array}{c} Q \supset Q_0 \\ \bigcup & \bigcup \\ P \supset P_0 \end{array}$$

be a pair  $(Q, Q_0)$  with subpair  $(P, P_0)$ . Then the latter pair is *locally* collared in the former, if for each  $a \in P$  there are neighbourhood pairs satisfying

$$(N(a, Q), N(a, Q_0)) = (N(a, P), N(a, P_0)) \times I.$$

In other words the natural generalisation of the absolute definition holds. The proof of 2.25 using these neighbourhoods provides a collar on  $(P, P_0)$  in  $(Q, Q_0)$ ; that is to say

**4.5** Theorem. Let  $(P, P_0) \subset (Q, Q_0)$  be locally collared with  $(P, P_0)$  compact. Then  $(P, P_0)$  is collared in  $(Q, Q_0)$ .

**4.6 Corollary.** Let  $M^{q,n}$  be a manifold pair with compact boundary. Then  $\partial M^{q,n}$  is collared in  $M^{q,n}$ .

#### **Regular Neighbourhoods**

Now let  $(X, X_0) \subset (P, P_0)$  where both X and  $X_0$  are compact  $P_0$  is a closed subset of P, and  $X_0 = X \cap P_0$ . Then *derived neighbourhoods* of X in  $(P, P_0)$  are constructed by triangulating a neighbourhood of X in P by the complex J so that X and  $P_0 \cap |J|$  both correspond to subcomplexes K and  $J_0$  with  $K \in J$ . Then both N(K, J') and  $N(K_0, J'_0) \subset N(K, J')$  is a *derived neighbourhood* of X in  $(P, P_0)$ .

 $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhoods are similarly constructed and the underlying polyhedron pair corresponding to a derived or  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood is a *regular neighbourhood*. The proof of 3.8, unchanged, shows that regular neighbourhoods are unique up to a homeomorphism of  $(P, P_0)$  with compact support and fixed on X.

#### Simplicial Neighbourhood Theorem for Pairs

**4.7 Theorem.** Let  $(N, N_0)$  be a neighbourhood of  $(X, X_0)$  in the interior of the manifold pair  $M^{q,n}$ . Then  $(N, N_0)$  is a regular neighbourhood if and only if

(1)  $(N, N_0)$  is a manifold pair

(2) there is a triangulation  $(K, K_0)$  of  $(N, N_0)$  with subcomplexes  $(L, L_0)$ ,  $(J, J_0)$  corresponding to  $(X, X_0)$ ,  $(\dot{N}, \dot{N}_0)$  such that  $L \ominus K$ , K = N(L, K),  $J = \dot{N}(L, K)$  and similar formulae with  $J_0, K_0, L_0$  replacing J, K, L.

*Proof.* "Only if" follows from definitions and a similar proof to 3.10, using 4.2. "If" is proved by induction together with the following corollaries (the induction starts with n = -1, i.e. the absolute case).

**4.8**<sub>*q*,*n*</sub> **Corollary** (cf. 3.12). Let  $B^{q,n} \subset M^{q,n}$  be an unknotted ball pair, then  $B^{q,n}$  is a regular neighbourhood of any point  $x \in \mathring{B}^n$  in  $M^{q,n}$ .

*Proof.* We have  $(B^{q,n}, x) = (I^{q,n}, 0)$  by the cone construction and we may triangulate  $I^{q,n}$  as the cone from 0 on a triangulation of  $\dot{I}^{q,n}$ . The result now follows from  $4.7_{q,n}$ .

**4.9**<sub>q,n</sub> Corollary (cf. 3.13). Let  $B^{q,n} \subset S^{q,n}$  be an unknotted ball pair in an unknotted sphere pair. Then  $cl(S^{q,n} - B^{q,n})$  is an unknotted ball pair.

*Proof.* We can take  $S^{q,n} = I^{q+1,n+1}$  and  $B^{q,n}$  to be a face pair by the argument of 3.13. Then  $cl(S^{q,n} - B^{q,n})$  is the opposite face pair with a collar on the boundary.

**4.10**<sub>q+1,n+1</sub> Corollary (cf. 3.14). Let  $M^{q+1,n+1} \subset \mathring{Q}^{q+1,n+1}$  be manifold pairs. Then  $\operatorname{cl}(Q-M)$  is a manifold pair.

The induction step now follows from 4.10 by the same proof as 3.11 but using collars for pairs, 4.6.

The other corollaries to 3.11 all have analogues for pairs, which we leave the reader to state; the proofs are directly analogous to the original ones. Isotopies of pairs are defined in the obvious way and the proof of the absolute regular neighbourhood theorem gives:

**4.11** Regular neighbourhood theorem for pairs. Let  $(N_i, N_{i,0})$  be regular neighbourhoods of X in  $(P, P_0)$  for i = 1, 2. Then there is an ambient isotopy of  $(P, P_0)$  fixed on X and with compact support carrying  $(N_1, N_{1,0})$  to  $(N_2, N_{2,0})$ . Moreover if  $(P, P_0)$  is a manifold pair and X is in the interior then we can assume the isotopy is fixed on any smaller neighbourhood and outside any larger one.

#### **Collapsing and Shelling for Pairs**

Let  $(X, X_0) \supset (Y, Y_0)$  with  $Y_0 = Y \cap X_0$  and suppose  $X \boxtimes Y$  across  $B^n$ from  $B^{n-1}$ . Then we say that the collapse respects  $X_0$  if either  $X_0 = Y_0$ (so that  $X_0$  does not meet  $B^n$  or  $B^{n-1}$ ) or  $B^n \subset X_0$  (so that  $X_0 \boxtimes Y_0$ ). In other words, the collapse either misses  $X_0$  completely or else takes place in  $X_0$ . A sequence of elementary collapses which respect the subpolyhedron is referred to as a collapse of pairs written  $(X, X_0) \searrow (Y, Y_0)$ . Now suppose  $M^{q,n} \supset M_0^{q,n}$  and  $M^q$  shells elementarily to  $M_0^q$  across  $B^q$ from  $B^{q-1}$ , then the shelling respects  $M^n$  if either  $M_0^n = M^n$  or else  $B^q \cap M^n$ and  $B^{q-1} \cap \partial M^n$  are unknotted subballs, so that  $M^n$  shells to  $M_0^n$  and we are removing an unknotted ball pair from  $M^{q,n}$  by an unknotted face. A sequence of elementary shellings which respect the submanifold is a shelling of pairs.

*Exercise*.  $M^{q,n}$  shells to  $M_0^{q,n}$  implies  $M^{q,n} \searrow M_0^{q,n}$ .

**4.12 Lemma** (cf. 3.25). If  $M^{q,n}$  shells to  $M_0^{q,n}$  then there is a homeomorphism h:  $M^{q,n} \to M_0^{q,n}$  fixed outside any neighbourhood of the shelling.

**4.13 Theorem** (cf. 3.26). Suppose  $M^{q,n}$  is a manifold pair and  $(X, X_0)$ ,  $(Y, Y_0) \subset M^{q,n}$  with  $X_0 = X \cap M^n$  and  $Y_0 = Y \cap M^n$ . Then if  $(X, X_0) \searrow (Y, Y_0)$  then a regular neighbourhood of X in  $M^{q,n}$  shells to one of Y in  $M^{q,n}$ .

**4.14 Corollary** (cf. 3.27). If  $(X, X_0) \searrow 0$  then a regular neighbourhood of  $(X, X_0)$  in  $M^{q,n}$  is an unknotted ball pair.

Proof of 4.13. Examine the proof of 3.26. There are two cases:

(1)  $Y_0 = X_0$ , in which case the proof of 3.26 gives a shelling of  $N^{q,n}$  to  $N_1^{q,n}$  without change.

(2)  $(X, X_0) \leq (Y, Y_0)$  by a collapse in  $X_0$ . In this case the proof of 3.26 generalised to pairs shows that  $N^{q,n}$  differs from  $N_1^{q,n}$  by the addition of ball pairs by face pairs and then by a similar inductive application of 4.14 we see that both pairs are unknotted. Hence  $N^{q,n}$  shells to  $N_1^{q,n}$ , as required.

We leave the reader to formulate and prove analogues of the other corollaries to 3.26.

#### **Application to Cellular Moves**

Two locally flat submanifolds of dimension  $n, M_1, M_2 \subset Q$ , are said to differ by a *cellular move* provided there is an embedded (n+1)-disc  $D^{n+1} \subset \mathring{Q}$ , which meets  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  in complementary faces, and  $M_1$  agrees with  $M_2$  away from  $D^{n+1}$ :



More precisely,

 $\operatorname{cl}((M_1 \cup M_2) - (M_1 \cap M_2)) = \partial D^{n+1}$ 

and

$$D^{n+1} \cap M_i = \partial D^{n+1} \cap M_i = D_i^n \quad \text{for } i = 1, 2.$$

Notice that we do not assume that  $D^{n+1}$  is locally flat in Q. The usefulness of cellular moves is the following result.

**4.15** Proposition. Let  $M_1, M_2 \subset Q$  differ by a cellular move. Then there is an isotopy of Q carrying  $M_1$  to  $M_2$  with support in an arbitrary neighbourhood of  $D^{n+1}$ .

*Proof.* Triangulate a smaller neighbourhood of D in Q,  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  so that D is a full subcomplex and let N,  $N_i$  be the resulting  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood poir of D in Q,  $M_i$ , i=1, 2. Then  $(N, N_i)$  is a regular neighbourhood pair of  $(D, D_i)$  in  $(Q, M_i)$  and hence an unknotted ball pair by 4.14 since  $(D, D_i) \searrow (D_i, D_i) \searrow 0$ . Now  $(\dot{N}, \dot{N_1}) = (\dot{N}, \dot{N_2})$  and by 4.4 there is a homeomorphism  $h: (N, N_1) \to (N, N_2)$  extending the identity on boundaries. Then by 3.22(i) h is isotopic to id mod boundaries and the required isotopy of Q is defined by extending this isotopy by the identity.

**4.16** Corollary. Let  $S^{q,n}$  be a locally flat sphere pair. Then  $S^{q,n}$  is unknotted if and only if  $S^n$  bounds an (n + 1)-ball  $B^{n+1}$  in  $S^q$ .

*Proof.* If  $S^{q,n}$  is unknotted then  $S^n$  bounds an (n+1)-ball since  $S^n \subset S^n * S^{q-1}$  bounds  $S^n *$  point (cf. 4.3). The result now follows from:

Sublemma. If  $S_0^n \subset S^q$ ,  $S_1^n \subset S^q$  both bound (n+1)-balls then there is a homeomorphism  $h: S^q \to S^q$  such that  $h(S_0^n) = S_1^n$ .

Proof of sublemma. Triangulate  $S^q$  with  $B^{n+1}$  (a ball spanning  $S_0^n$ ) a subcomplex and, after further subdivision if necessary, find an (n+1)simplex  $A \in B^{n+1}$  which meets  $S^n$  in a top dimensional face. Then  $D = \operatorname{cl}(B - A)$  is a ball by 3.25 and  $S^n$ ,  $\dot{A}$  differ by a cellular move across D. So we may assume that  $S_0^n$  is the boundary of a simplex which in turn is the face of a q-simplex. This is also true of  $S_1^n$  and the result follows since any two q-simplexes are ambient isotopic by the disc theorem (3.34). *Exercise.* Define  $S^n \subset \mathbb{R}^q$  to be unknotted, if  $S^n$  is ambient homeomorphic to  $\dot{I}^{n+1} \subset \mathbb{R}^q$ . Prove an analogous statement to 4.16.

#### **Disc Theorem for Pairs**

Finally we generalise parts of the last section of Chapter 3.

**4.17** Proposition (cf. 3.33). Let  $M^{q,n}$  be a manifold pair with  $M^n$  connected and  $x, y \in \mathring{M}^n$ . Then there is an ambient isotopy of  $M^{q,n}$  fixed on  $\partial M^{q,n}$  of compact support carrying x to y.

**4.18** Proposition (cf. 3.32). Let  $S^{q,n}$  be an unknotted sphere pair and  $h: S^{q,n} \rightarrow S^{q,n}$  a self homeomorphism which preserves orientation of both factors. Then h is ambient isotopic to id.

*Proof.* By induction on q. Let  $B^{q,n} \subset S^{q,n}$  be an unknotted pair and  $C^{q,n}$  the complementary pair and  $x \in \mathring{B}^n$ . We may assume h(x) = x by 4.17 and that  $h(B^{q,n}) = B^{q,n}$  by 4.9 and 4.11. Then  $h|\partial B^{q,n}$  is isotopic to the identity by induction and we extend this isotopy to  $S^{q,n}$  by two applications of 4.19(a) (below); finally use 4.19(b) twice to complete the proof.

#### 4.19 Lemma (cf. 3.22).

(a) Any isotopy of  $\partial M^{q,n}$  extends to  $M^{q,n}$ .

(b) Let  $h_i: B^{q,n} \to C^{q,n}$ , i = 1, 2, be homeomorphisms which agree on  $\partial B^{q,n}$ . Then  $h_1$  is ambient isotopic to  $h_2$ .

**4.20** Theorem (Disc theorem for pairs). Let  $M^{q,n}$  be a connected oriented pair (i.e. both are connected and oriented), and let  $h_i: I^{q,n} \to \mathring{M}^{q,n}$  be embeddings, i = 1, 2, which preserve orientation on both factors. Then there is an ambient isotopy of  $M^{q,n}$  fixed on  $\partial M^{q,n}$  and carrying  $h_1$  to  $h_2$ .

*Proof.* By 4.17, 4.9 and 4.11 we can assume  $h_1(I^{q,n}) = h_2(I^{q,n})$  (as in proof of 4.18). Then by 4.18 and 4.19(a) we can assume  $h_1|\partial I^{q,n} = h_2|\partial I^{q,n}$ . Now use 4.19(b).

*Remark.* Stronger forms of 4.18 and 4.20 are true, in which we assume h = id on  $S^n$  (or  $h_1 = h_2$  on  $I^n$ ) and obtain an isotopy fixed on the submanifold. These are proved by using *relative* regular neighbourhoods, which are a more complicated and more general tool than regular neighbourhoods for pairs (see bibliography).

## **Isotopy Extension**

In this final section we study the question mentioned in the last chapter of when a given isotopy  $F: X \times I \rightarrow Y \times I$  is ambient. The spirit of our result is similar to the spirit of the collaring theorem -F is ambient if and only if it is locally ambient (i.e. for each  $(x, t) \in X \times I$  we can find a "short" isotopy of a neighbourhood of  $F_t(x)$  in Y which covers the restriction of F to a neighbourhood of (x, t)). In fact we will get away with a rather weaker condition (see below). A useful corollary is that an isotopy of a manifold M in a manifold Q is ambient provided  $F(M \times J)$  is locally flat in  $Q \times J$  for each subinterval  $J = [s, t] \subset I$ . This is always true in codimension  $\geq 3$  by the unknotting theorem mentioned earlier. The main theorem will follow from existence of collars for pairs and a procedure for making a map level-preserving.

We first prove an extension of 4.5 (the collaring theorem for pairs) to the case where  $P_0 \subset Q_0$  has a given collar and we wish to extend it to a collar on P in Q.

## Definitions

(1) We extend the meaning of a *collar* on P in Q to include an embedding  $c: P \times J \rightarrow Q$  onto a neighbourhood such that c identifies  $P \times l$  with P where l is one endpoint of J. Throughout this section J denotes an interval  $[s, t] \subset I$ .

(2) A collar  $c': P \times J' \to Q$  is a reduction of c if  $c'(x \times J') \subset c(x \times J)$  for each  $x \in P$ . I.e. near P, c and c' determine the same collar lines, but the parametrisation might well be different.

(3) Let  $(P, P_0) \subset (Q, Q_0)$  be a compact locally collarable subpair and  $c_0: P_0 \times I \rightarrow Q_0$  a given collar. Then  $c_0$  is *locally extendible* if for each  $x \in P_0$  there is a collar pair defined locally whose restriction to  $P_0$  is a reduction of  $c_0$ .

**4.21** Addendum to 4.5 (Extending collars). Let  $(P, P_0) \subset (Q, Q_0)$  be a compact locally collarable subpair and  $c_0: P_0 \times I \rightarrow Q_0$  a locally extendible collar. Then there is an  $\varepsilon > 0$  and a collar  $c: P \times [0, \varepsilon] \rightarrow Q$  which agrees with  $c_0$  where they are both defined.

*Proof.* The proof of 2.25 using the local extensions gives a collar  $c_1$  which restricts to a reduction of  $c_0$ . But we can correct  $c_1$  to agree with  $c_0$  on  $P_0 \times [0, \varepsilon]$ , by the following sublemma, where  $\varepsilon$  is chosen so small that  $c_0(P_0 \times [0, \varepsilon]) \subset c_1(P_0 \times [0, 1))$ .

**Sublemma.** Suppose given an embedding  $q: P_0 \times [0, \varepsilon] \rightarrow P_0 \times [0, 1)$ ,  $0 < \varepsilon < 1$ , which is a reduction of the idendity. Then there is a homeomorphism  $q_1: P \times I \rightarrow P \times I$  which extends q and such that  $q_1(x \times I) = x \times I$  for each  $x \in P$ .

*Proof.* The construction of  $q_1$  is similar to the construction of g in the proof of 2.26. Use the method of construction of g to define  $q_1$  on

 $P_0 \times I$  then extend to  $P \times I$  using a cylindrical cell subdivision and inductive conical extension.

**4.22** Corollary. Let  $M^{q,n}$  be a manifold pair with compact boundary and  $c_0: \partial M^n \times I \to M^n$  a collar, then there is a collar  $c: \partial M^q \times [0, \varepsilon] \to M^q$  which agrees with  $c_0$  where they are both defined.

Proof. Local extendibility follows easily from local flatness.

**4.23** Level-preserving lemma. Suppose X is compact and  $c: X \times I \rightarrow X \times I$  is a collar on  $X \times 0$  in  $X \times I$ . Then there is an  $\varepsilon > 0$  and a collar  $c_1: X \times I \rightarrow X \times I$  such that  $c_1|X \times [0, \varepsilon]$  is level-preserving. Moreover

(1) c and  $c_1$  agree outside an arbitrary neighbourhood of  $X \times 0$  and are ambient isotopic fixing  $X \times 0$  and the complement of this neighbourhood. (2) If  $c|X_0 \times [0, \delta]$  is already level-preserving then we can assume  $c_1|X_0 \times I = c|X_0 \times I$  and the isotopy fixes  $X_0 \times I$ .

*Proof.* Let  $c: K \to L$  be a triangulation of c and choose an  $\varepsilon > 0$  so that no vertices of K or L lie in  $X \times (0, \varepsilon]$ . Form deriveds K', L' of K, L near  $X \times 0$  be starring each simplex on the  $\varepsilon$ -level. Then let  $c_1: K' \to L'$  be the canonical simplicial embedding. It remains to check the properties listed:

(1) The first half is assured by choosing fine enough triangulations for K and L and the second half follows from 3.23.

(2) Star c(A) at c(a) where  $A \in K$  is starred at a.

Now let  $F: X \times I \to Y \times I$  be an isotopy of compact polyhedra. We say that F is *locally trivial* if for each subinterval  $J \subset I$ , the natural collar on  $F(X \times J)$  in  $F(X \times J)$  is locally extendible to a collar on  $Y \times J$  in  $Y \times J$ .

## Remarks

(1) A priori a locally trivial isotopy need not be locally ambient (see the beginning of this section) since a local extension need not

(a) be level-preserving

(b) agree precisely with the natural collar on  $F(X \times I)$ .

However the conditions are in fact equivalent by Theorem 4.26 below.

(2) Local triviality can be reformulated in an intrinsic way without reference to collars, using a notion of "intrinsic dimension" (see bibliography and historical notes).

**4.24** Isotopy extension theorem. Let  $F: X \times I \rightarrow Y \times I$  be an isotopy of compact polyhedra. Then F is ambient if and only if it is locally trivial.

**4.25** Corollary. An isotopy  $F: M \times I \rightarrow Q \times I$  of compact manifolds is ambient provided  $F(M \times J) \subset Q \times J$  is locally flat for each subinterval  $J \subset I$ .

#### Proof. Local triviality follows easily from local flatness.

Proof of the theorem. "Only if" is obvious. To prove "if", consider  $t \in I$  and J = [s, t] a subinterval. Then by local triviality and 4.21 there is a collar  $c: Y \times [t - \varepsilon, t] \rightarrow Y \times J$  which extends the natural collar on  $F(X \times t)$  in  $F(X \times J)$  in other words so that  $c \circ (F_t \times id) = F$ . By 4.23 we can assume that c is level preserving for perhaps a smaller  $\varepsilon$ . I.e. we have a "short" isotopy covering F for times "before" t. Similar remarks apply "after" t and we have a short isotopy covering F for all times near t. Therefore, using compactness of I, we can find a finite number of intervals  $[t_{i-1}, t_i]$  which cover  $I, 0 = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_j = 1$  and such that for each i there is a short isotopy (i.e. level-preserving homeomorphism):

$$H^{(i)}: Y \times [t_{i-1}, t_i] \to Y \times [t_{i-1}, t_i]$$

such that

$$H^{(i)} \circ (F_{s_i} \times \mathrm{id}) = F | X \times [t_{i-1}, t_i]$$

for some (fixed)  $s_i \in I$ . We form the required isotopy *H* by piecing together the  $H^{(i)}$ 's: Define

$$H|Y \times [0, t_1] = H^{(0)} \circ ((H_0^{(0)})^{-1} \times id)$$

then

$$H \circ (F_0 \times \mathrm{id}) = H^{(0)} \circ ((H_0^{(0)})^{-1} \times \mathrm{id}) \circ (F_0 \times \mathrm{id})$$
$$= H^{(0)} \circ (F_{s_0} \times \mathrm{id})$$
$$= F, \quad \text{as required.}$$

In general define  $H|Y \times [t_{i-1}, t_i]$  inductively by

$$H|Y \times [t_{i-1}, t_i] = H^{(i)} \circ ((H^{(i)}_{t_{i-1}})^{-1} \times \mathrm{id}) \circ (H_{t_{i-1}} \times \mathrm{id})$$

and the covering property is proved similarly.

Exercises

(1) Examine the compactness requirements of 4.24.

(2) By examining the proof of 4.24 show that we can assume H is fixed outside an arbitrary neighbourhood of the *track* of  $F (= \bigcup F_t(X))$ .

(3) Prove also that if F is a proper isotopy of manifolds and is fixed on  $\partial M$  (i.e.  $F_t | \partial M = F_0$ ) then we can assume H is fixed on  $\partial Q$ .

(4) Use 4.23 to prove uniqueness of collars up to isotopy by "shrinking" the time parameter and using the obvious isotopy which matches levelpreserving collars. Use 4.24 to deduce a uniqueness theorem up to ambient isotopy in the case when Q - im(c) is locally collarable at  $c(P \times 1)$ . Deduce that collars of manifolds are unique up to ambient isotopy. We give general position theorems for polyhedra in manifolds and applications to unknotting in the stable range, piping and the Whitney lemma. The last two applications will be used in the proof of the h-cobordism theorem in the next chapter.

## **General Position**

We consider two situations

(i)  $P, Q \subset M$  are polyhedra. We wish to minimise the dimension of  $P \cap Q$  by a small ambient isotopy of P in M.

(ii)  $f: P \rightarrow M$  is a map. We wish to minimise the dimension of the singular set of f by a small homotopy of f.

The program is: first, prove relative theorems for  $M = \mathbb{R}^m$  by triangulating and shifting vertices; second, cover P or f(P) by charts in M and inductively apply results for  $\mathbb{R}^m$  to each chart in turn.

#### 5.1. Definitions

(1) For this section only, *map* means continuous map rather than p.l. map.

(2) Let Y be a metric space. A homotopy  $f: X \times I \to Y$  is an  $\varepsilon$ -homotopy if for each  $(x, t) \in X \times I$ ,  $d(f(x, 0), f(x, t)) < \varepsilon$ . In other words, each point stays in an  $\varepsilon$ -neighbourhood of its initial position during the homotopy.

(3) An isotopy  $F: X \times I \to Y \times I$  is an  $\varepsilon$ -isotopy if the composition  $\pi_1 \circ F: X \times I \to Y \times I \to Y$  is an  $\varepsilon$ -homotopy.

(4) A map  $f: X \to Y$  is closed if f(C) is closed in Y for each closed set  $C \subset X$ . Thus an embedding is closed if and only if its image is a closed subset.

(5) The singular set of a map  $f: X \to Y$ , denoted  $S(f) \subset X$ , is defined by

$$S(f) = cl \{x | x \in X, f^{-1}f(x) \neq x\}.$$

Thus f|X - S(f) is injective.

(6) Let  $f: P \to Q$  be p. l. then f is non-degenerate if  $f^{-1}(y)$  is 0-dimensional for each  $y \in f(P)$ .

# 5.2 Exercises

(1) Suppose that  $f: P \rightarrow Q$  is p.l. and P is compact. Then S(f) is a subpolyhedron of P.

(2) Is S(f) a subpolyhedron if P is non-compact? What if P is non-compact and f is closed?

(3) Let P be compact then  $f: P \rightarrow Q$  is non-degenerate if and only if f|A is injective for each simplex A of P in any triangulation of f.

(4) Let f be non-degenerate and suppose that  $(P, P_0)$  is a compact pair. Define  $P/f|P_0$  by identifying  $x \in P_0$  with  $y \in P_0$  if f(x) = f(y). Then  $P/f|P_0$  can be given the structure of an abstract polyhedron, so that the quotient map  $\pi: P \to P/f|P_0$  is p.1. (see 2.27(3)).

Definition. Suppose  $P^p$ ,  $Q^q \subset M^m$  are subpolyhedra of the unbounded *m*-manifold *M* and that p+q=m, where  $p=\dim(P)$ ,  $q=\dim(Q)$ . We say *P* is transverse to *Q* in *M* if

(i)  $P \cap Q$  consists of a finite set of points,

(ii) for each  $p \in P \cap Q$  there are neighbourhoods  $U_1, U_2, U_3$  of p in P, Q, M such that  $(U_1, U_2, U_3)$  is p.l. homeomorphic to a neighbourhood of 0 in  $(\mathbb{R}^p \times 0, 0 \times \mathbb{R}^q, \mathbb{R}^p \times \mathbb{R}^q)$ .

*Remark.* There are more general definitions of transversality. See bibliography for references.

**5.3 General position theorem for embeddings.** Let  $Q^q, P_0 \subset P^p$  be closed subpolyhedra of the unbounded manifold  $M^m$  with  $cl(P-P_0)$  compact. Let  $\varepsilon > 0$  be given. Then there is an  $\varepsilon$ -isotopy of M with compact support, fixed on  $P_0$  and finishing with  $h: M \to M$  such that

$$\dim \{h(P-P_0) \cap Q\} \leq p+q-m.$$

Addendum. If p + q = m then we can also arrange that  $h(P - P_0)$  meets Q transversely.

We describe the application of 5.3 as "shifting P into general position with respect to Q, keeping  $P_0$  fixed".

**5.4** General position theorem for maps.  $P_0 \subset P$  is a closed subpolyhedron with  $cl(P-P_0)$  compact.  $f: P^p \to M^m$  is a closed map with  $p \leq m$ , such that  $f|P_0$  is p.l. and non-degenerate.  $\varepsilon > 0$  is given. Then there is an  $\varepsilon$ -homotopy of f rel  $P_0$  to f' which is p.l. and non-degenerate and such that  $\dim(S(f')-P_0) \leq 2p-m$ .

Addendum. If m=2p then we can also arrange that the singularities of  $f'|P-P_0$  are transverse double points.

We describe 5.4 as "shifting f into general position  $rel P_0$ ".

Proof of 5.3. Special case  $M = \mathbb{R}^m$ . Let N be a compact neighbourhood of  $cl(P - P_0)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^m$  which meets P, Q in compact polyhedra  $P_1, Q_1$  say. Choose linear triangulations  $(J, K, L, K_0)$  of  $(N, P_1, Q_1, P_1 \cap P_0)$ . Order the vertices of  $K - K_0$ . Suppose there are t of them. For each vertex in turn define an  $\varepsilon/t$ -homeomorphism of J by shifting the vertex a distance less than  $\varepsilon/t$  and extending conewise to the star. This "linear move" is supported by a ball and hence the end of an  $\varepsilon/t$ -isotopy of compact support by 3.22. Choose the moves in turn to make the set  $K^{(0)} \cup L^{(0)}$ maximally affine independent and then the required properties are easily checked.

General case. Let  $B_i$ , i=1,...,t, be a cover of  $cl(P-P_0)$  by m-balls in M. Define

$$P_r = P_0 \cup \bigcup_{i=1}^r (P \cap B_i)$$

then  $P_t = P$ .

Induction hypothesis. The theorem is true with P replaced by  $P_r$ .

The hypothesis is trivially true for r=0. Suppose it is true for r-1. Let U be an open neighbourhood of  $B_r$  homeomorphic with  $\mathbb{R}^m$  $(U=B\cup \text{open collar})$  and let  $A_1=P\cap B_r$ . Choose, by induction, a  $\delta$ -isotopy of M carrying P to h(P) with  $h(P_{r-1}-P_0)\cap Q$  of minimal dimension and  $\delta < \varepsilon/2$  sufficiently small that  $h(A_1) \subset U$ .

Now define

$$A_0 = h(P_{r-1}) \cap U$$
$$A = h(P_r) \cap U = A_0 \cup h(A_1)$$

then apply the case  $M = \mathbb{R}^m$  to  $A, A_0$  in U to get an  $\varepsilon/2$ -isotopy of U of compact support moving  $h(A_1)$  into general position with respect to  $Q \cap U$ . Extend to M by the identity. Combining the two isotopies establishes the induction step.

*Proof of the addendum.* The case  $M = \mathbb{R}^m$  is easy since by independence the only intersections must lie in the interiors of top dimensional simplexes. The general case follows.

Proof of 5.4.  $M = \mathbb{R}^m$ . By 5.2(4) we can assume that  $f | P_0$  is an embedding (first without loss of generality restrict to a compact neighbourhood of P in  $P_0$ ). Now triangulate  $P, P_0$  by complexes  $K, K_0$  of sufficiently small mesh that  $f(st(v, K)) \subset \varepsilon/2$ -ball for each vertex  $v \in K$ . Choose images f'(v) for each  $v \in K - K_0$  within  $\varepsilon/2$  of f(v) so that  $f'(K^{(0)})$  is maximally independent. Define f' by extending linearly to simplexes and use the linear homotopy  $f \simeq f'$ . The required properties are easily checked. The general case and addendum follow as in 5.3.

*Exercises.* Remove the compactness condition on  $cl(P-P_0)$  by using locally finite covers and a countable induction. Prove theorems for bounded M by first working in  $\dot{M}$  and then considering the double of M.

## **Embedding and Unknotting**

**5.5** Theorem (Embedding in double dimension). Let  $M^m$  be a compact *m*-manifold. Then there is an embedding  $M^m \to \mathbb{R}^{2m}$ , provided m > 2.

*Proof.* It suffices to consider one component, so without loss we may assume M is connected. Let  $f: M \to \mathbb{R}^{2^m}$  be a map in general position. Then f has only double points  $x_1, \ldots, x_n, y_1, \ldots, y_n$  say, i.e.  $f(x_i) = f(y_i)$ and f is an embedding off  $X = \{x_i\} \cup \{y_i\}$ . By connectivity and general position we can assume that the cone on X, CX is embedded in Mextending the inclusion of X, see Fig. 34. Again by general position we have Cf(CX) embedded in  $\mathbb{R}^{2m}$  extending the inclusion of f(CX) and meeting f(M) in f(CX). Now choose triangulations so that X, CX, Cf(CX) are subcomplexes and f is simplicial. Take second deriveds so that f is still simplicial and let  $N_0$  be the second derived neighbourhood of CXin M and N the second derived neighbourhood of C f(CX) in  $\mathbb{R}^{2m}$ . Then  $f \partial N_0 \subset \partial N$  and  $f N_0 \subset N$ . Now  $N_0$ , N are balls by 3.27 since CX, Cf(CX) are collapsible, and further  $f|c|(M-N_0)$  is an embedding. Now redefine f on  $N_0$  as follows. By the cone construction choose an embedding  $N_0 \rightarrow N$  extending f on  $\partial N_0$ . We now have the required embedding.



Fig. 34

#### Remarks

(1) The embedding constructed in 5.5 is locally flat. This follows from 5.7 below.

(2) If m=2, the result is still true since a closed 2-manifold is known to be a connected sum of tori and projective planes, each of which embeds in  $\mathbb{R}^4$ .

(3) In Chapter 7 we will improve 5.5 considerably in the case that M is more highly connected.

- 5.6 Theorem (Unknotting spheres).
- (i)  $S^1$  unknots in  $S^q$  for  $q \ge 4$ .
- (ii)  $S^n$  unknots in  $S^q$  for  $q \ge 2n+1$  and  $n \ge 2$ .

**5.7 Corollary.** A proper manifold pair  $M^{q,n}$  is locally flat provided  $n=1, q \ge 1$  or  $n=2, q \ge 5$  or  $n>2, q \ge 2n$ .

*Proof.* The case n=1 is trivial; the other cases follow from 5.6 on looking at link pairs.

*Proof of 5.6.* (i) By 3.20 we can assume  $S^1 \subset \mathbb{R}^q$  and notice that  $S^1$  is locally flat since  $S^0$  unknots in  $S^{q-1}$ .

Now choose a point  $x \in \mathbb{R}^q$  in "general position" with respect to  $S^1$ . More precisely choose  $|L| = S^1$  and

$$x \in \mathbb{R}^{q} - \bigcup \{ \langle AB \rangle | A, B \in L \}.$$

Recall that  $\langle P \rangle$  is the minimal subspace spanned by P. Then  $xS^1$  is a cone, hence a ball, and the result follows from 4.16.

(ii) By (i) any  $M^2 \subset M^q$  is locally flat for  $q \ge 5$ . This is the start of an induction. Assume inductively that  $m \ge 2$  and any  $M^m \subset M^q$  is locally flat for  $q \ge 2m+1$ . Let  $S^m \subset S^q$  be the given pair. By 3.20 we can assume  $S^m \subset \mathbb{R}^q$ . We claim that a point  $x \in \mathbb{R}^q$  can be chosen in "general position" with respect to  $S^m$  so that no line through x meets  $S^m$  in more than two points and that each such line is isolated. This is seen as follows:

Choose  $|L| = S^m$  and define

$$T = \{ \langle AB \rangle | A, B \in L, \langle AB \rangle \neq \mathbb{R}^q \}.$$

Then  $\mathbb{R}^q - T$  is open and dense and if  $x \notin T$  and  $A, B \in L$  then there is at most one line through x meeting both A and B, for otherwise  $x \in \langle AB \rangle$ and dim  $\langle AB \rangle \leq 2m$  which implies  $x \in T$ . It follows that only finitely many lines through x meet  $S^m$  in more than one point, and further each such line pierces only m-dimensional simplexes in their interiors. Now suppose A, B, C are m-simplexes of L and l is a line which pierces each of A, B, C at an interior point. Call l a transversal and let T(A, B, C) be the union of the transversals of A, B and C. Then T(A, B, C) is part of an algebraic variety of dimension < q and since L is finite we may suppose that  $x \notin T(A, B, C)$  for any choice of A, B, C. The required properties of x are now clear.

Now consider the singular cone  $xS^m$ . A typical singular ray  $l_i$  meets  $S^m$  in two points  $n_i, f_i$  and we choose the labels so that  $n_i$ , the near point, is nearer to x than  $f_i$ . Define  $N = \bigcup \{n_i\}$  the near set and  $F = \bigcup \{f_i\}$  the far set. Since  $m \ge 2$  we can find an arc  $\alpha \subset S^m$  with  $N \subset \alpha$  and  $F \cap \alpha = \emptyset$ ; then by taking a suitable regular neighbourhood of  $\alpha$  we have a ball  $B^m \subset S^m$  with  $N \subset \mathring{B}^m, F \subset S^m - B^m$ .


Fig. 35

Define  $S_1^m = S^m - B^m \cup x \dot{B}^m$ . Then  $S_1^m$  differs from  $S^m$  by the cellular move across  $x B^m$  (which is a cone since  $B^m$  contains only near points). But  $S_1^m$  bounds the ball  $x(S^m - \dot{B}^m)$  (see Fig. 36).



**5.8 Corollary.** Suppose  $F: M \times I \rightarrow int Q$  is an embedding and  $q \ge 2m$ , then  $F_0(M)$  and  $F_1(M)$  are ambient isotopic by an isotopy supported by a compact set in int Q.

*Proof.* By 3.26  $M \times [-1, 1]$  shells to  $M \times [-1, 0]$ . Use this shelling to define a series of cellular moves from  $F_0(M)$  to  $F_1(M)$ . The result then follows from 4.15 since any embedding of M in Q is locally flat by 5.7.

*Remark.* We show later (7.1) that the hypothesis of 5.6 and hence of 5.8 can be weakened to  $q - m \ge 3$ .

**5.9** Corollary. Suppose  $f_0, f_1: M \to \text{int } Q$  are homotopic embeddings, M is closed and  $q \ge 2m+2$ . Then  $f_0(M)$  and  $f_1(M)$  are ambient isotopic by an isotopy supported by a compact set in int Q.

*Proof.* Let  $f: M \times I \to \text{Int } Q$  be the homotopy which we can assume to be in general position. Then  $S(f) \subset M \times (0, 1)$  consists of points  $x_1, \ldots, x_n, y_1, \ldots, y_n$  and  $f(x_i) = f(y_i), i = 1, \ldots, n$  are *n* distinct points of  $f(M \times I)$ . As in the proof of 5.6 choose arcs  $\alpha_{(i)}$  in each component of  $M \times I$  which contain the  $x_i$  but not the  $y_i$  and each of which meets  $M \times 1$  in one point  $x_{(i)}$  and does not meet  $M \times 0$ , see Fig. 37.



Take  $B_{(j)}$  to be a regular neighbourhood of  $\alpha_{(j)}$  which misses the  $y_i$ . Then  $B_{(j)}$  is a ball and  $B_{(j)} \cap M \times 1$  is a face. Then there is a series of cellular moves across the  $B_{(j)}$  and  $cl(M \times I - \bigcup B_{(j)}) \cong M \times I$  is embedded by f. The result now follows from 5.8.

*Example.*  $M = S_1^m \cup S_2^m$ ,  $Q = S^{2m+1}$  then there are homotopic embeddings which are not isotopic. They are constructed by winding  $S_1^m$  with degree r around  $S_2^m$  using the fact that  $Q - S_2^m$  has the homotopy type of an m-sphere by 5.6. See final exercises of this chapter for more details.



Fig. 38

*Exercise.* The conclusion of 5.9 still holds if M is not closed provided the homotopy is fixed outside a compact *m*-manifold  $M_0 \subset \text{Int } M$ .

Piping

# Piping

Suppose  $M_1^m$ ,  $M_2^m \subset Q^q$  are two locally flat submanifolds of the connected manifold Q and that  $q-m \ge 2$ . We will explain how to form a new submanifold  $M_3^m$  by "piping"  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  together. This is done by removing the interiors of small *m*-discs in each of  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  and running a "tube" between the two "holes" thus formed. The tube is an embedded  $S^{m-1} \times I$  hence  $M_3$  is homeomorphic with  $M_1 \# M_2$ . We can arrange that  $M_3$  is oriented correctly in the case that  $M_1$  and  $M_2$  are both oriented.



Fig. 39

The tube is found in a neighbourhood of an arc  $\alpha$  from  $a_1 \in M_1$  to  $a_2 \in M_2$ ;  $\alpha$  exists by connectedness and general position.

**5.10** Proposition. Let  $(N, N_1, N_2)$  be a regular neighbourhood of  $\alpha$  in  $(Q, M_1, M_2)$ . Then there is a homeomorphism

 $h\colon (N, N_1, N_2) \rightarrow \left(I^{q-1} \times [-2, 2], I^m \times (-1), I^m \times 1\right)$ 

and h can be chosen, provided  $q - m \ge 2$ , to preserve any given orientations.

Using 5.10 we can define the tube to be  $h^{-1}(\dot{I}^m \times [-1, 1])$  and the required properties of  $M_3$  are obvious.

Proof of 5.10. Let J triangulate Q so that  $M_i$ , i=1, 2 appears as a subcomplex  $P_i$  and  $\alpha$  appears as a full subcomplex K. Let  $L \subset K$  be the simplicial complement of  $a_2$ . Now let J' be a derived of J near  $L \cup a_2$ . Without loss we may assume that N = |N(K, J')|,  $N_i = |N(a_i, P_i')|$ . Now by the proof of 3.26  $|N(L, J')| \cap |N(a_2, J')|$  is a (q-1)-ball,  $B^{q-1}$  say, and by 4.14  $(|N(a_2, J')|, N_2)$  and  $(|N(L, J')|, N_1)$  are both unknotted ball pairs. Choose homeomorphisms

$$\begin{split} h_1 \colon \left( |N(L, J')|, N_1 \right) &\to \left( I^{q-1} \times [-2, 0], I^m \times (-1) \right), \\ h_2 \colon \left( N(a_2, J'), N_2 \right) &\to \left( I^{q-1} \times [0, 2], I^m \times (+1) \right). \end{split}$$

By composing with suitable reflections we can assume that the  $h_i$  preserve orientations. Finally we have only to ensure that  $h_i|B^{q-1}$  is a homeomorphism onto  $I^{q-1} \times 0$  and that  $h_1|B^{q-1} = h_2|B^{q-1}$  and then we can

define  $h = h_1 \cup h_2$ . But this follows easily from the disc theorem, applied to give an isotopy of  $\partial (I^{q-1} \times [-2, 0]) - I^m \times (-1)$  with compact support carrying  $h_1(B^{q-1})$  onto  $I^{q-1} \times 0$  (and similarly for  $h_2$ ). Notice that  $q-m \ge 2$  is used here to conclude that this manifold is connected.

*Exercise.* The piping tube defined using 5.10 is unique up to ambient isotopy provided  $M_1$ ,  $M_2$  are both connected,  $q - m \ge 3$  and Q is simply-connected.

*Hint.* By general position and connectivity  $\alpha$  is unique. Now use regular neighbourhoods and induction to match two tubes.

#### Whitney Lemma and Unlinking Spheres

The Whitney lemma enables us to cancel double points. The situation is this. We are given a pair of connected locally flat submanifolds  $P^{p}, Q^{q} \subset M^{m}$  which are transverse, so that p+q=m.

If each of P, Q and M are oriented, then we can attach a sign to an intersection point  $p \in P \cap Q$  (see below), and the idea is to give conditions under which we can "cancel" a pair of intersections of opposite sign; in other words find an ambient isotopy of P which removes this pair from the set of intersections of P and Q.

Let  $p \in P \cap Q$ , then by transversality we can find an embedding  $h: I^m \to M$  such that h(0) = p,  $h^{-1}(P) = I^p \times 0$  and  $h^{-1}(Q) = 0 \times I^q$ .

**5.11 Lemma.** The orientation class of h is determined by the orientation classes of  $h|I^p \times 0$  and  $h|0 \times I^q$ .

*Proof.* Suppose  $h_1$  and  $h_2$  are two such charts and that  $h_i|I^p \times 0$  and  $0 \times I^q$  are in the same class. Then by the S.N.T. (for triples) we can assume im  $(h_1) = im(h_2)$  and we have  $g = h_1^{-1}h_2|I^m$  a self-homeomorphism of  $I^m$  which preserves  $I^p \times 0$  and  $0 \times I^q$ , and orientation of both of these. Now g is isotopic either to the identity or to  $r_m$ . In the first case  $h_1$  is easily seen to be isotopic to  $h_2$ .

So assume g is isotopic to  $r_m$ . Then  $g: (\dot{I}^m, 0 \times \dot{I}^q) \rightarrow (\dot{I}^m, 0 \times \dot{I}^q)$  is isotopic to  $r_m$  as a homeomorphism of pairs by 4.18 and hence  $g|\dot{I}^p \times 0: \dot{I}^p \rightarrow \dot{I}^m - 0 \times \dot{I}^q$  is isotopic to  $r_p$ . This contradicts the assumption that  $g|\dot{I}^p \times 0$  is orientation preserving since  $\dot{I}^m - 0 \times \dot{I}^q$  deformation retracts on  $\dot{I}^p \times 0$  and we get a self-homotopy of  $\dot{I}^p$  reserving orientation (which is impossible by 3.31).

Using 5.11 we can define the sign of p,  $\varepsilon(p) = \pm 1$ , as follows. Choose h so that  $h|I^p \times 0$  and  $h|0 \times I^q$  are in the given orientation classes for P and Q. Then  $\varepsilon(p) = +1$  if h is in the given class for M and -1 if not. We also define the *intersection number* of P and Q,  $\varepsilon(P, Q)$ , to be  $\sum \{\varepsilon(p) | p \in P \cap Q\}$ .

**5.12** Whitney lemma (simply-connected version). Suppose P, Q, M are given as above and that  $p, q \in P \cap Q$  satisfy  $\varepsilon(p) = -\varepsilon(q)$ . Then there is an isotopy of M carrying P to P' with P' transverse to Q in M and with  $P' \cap Q = P \cap Q - p - q$ ; provided either

- (1)  $p \ge 3, q \ge 3 \text{ and } \pi_1(M) = 0 \text{ or }$
- (2)  $p=2, q \ge 3 \text{ and } \pi_1(M-Q)=0.$

Moreover the isotopy has support in a compact set which does not meet any other intersection points. (See appendix for definition of  $\pi_1()$ .)

**5.13** Corollary. If  $\varepsilon(P, Q) = 0$  and the hypotheses of 5.12 are satisfied then we can ambient isotope P off Q, by an isotopy which has compact support.

Remarks

(1) If  $p \ge 3$  then  $\pi_1(M) \cong \pi_1(M-Q)$  by general position; therefore we can restate the lemma with the single hypothesis  $\pi_1(M-Q) = 0$ .

(2) The Whitney lemma fails for p = q = 2, see bibliography.

We will prove 5.12 by induction on  $m = \dim M$  together with a theorem on unlinking spheres. By a link we mean a triple  $S_1^p, S_2^q \subset S^r$  of spheres where  $(S, S_i)$  is an unknotted pair for i=1, 2. The standard link is  $I^{p+1} \times (-1)$ ,  $I^{q+1} \times 1 \subset \partial (I^r \times [-2, 2])$  and a link is unlinked if it is homeomorphic with the standard link.

**5.14** Exercise. A link is unlinked if and only if there is a ball  $B^r \subset S^r$  with  $S_1 \subset B$ ,  $S_2 \subset S - B$ .

Hint. Use the disc theorem (as in the proof of 5.10).

We are interested in links in the *critical* dimension r = p + q + 1. If r > p + q + 1 then all links are unlinked by general position (suppose  $p \le q$  and find a disc spanning  $S^p$  in the complement of  $S^q$ , then take a suitable regular neighbourhood to be the  $B^r$  of 5.14). We say that a link is *homologically trivial* if  $S_1$  is homologous to zero in  $S - S_2$  (or more precisely if  $i_*$ :  $\tilde{H}_p(S_1) \rightarrow \tilde{H}_p(S - S_2)$  is the zero map). We shall see in the next lemma that this is a symmetric condition.

5.15 Lemma. The following are equivalent:

(1)  $(S, S_1, S_2)$  is homologically trivial;

(2) for each locally flat disc  $D_1 \subset S$  with  $\partial D_1 = S_1$  and  $D_1$  transverse to  $S_2$  we have  $\varepsilon(D_1, S_2) = 0$ ;

(3) for each disc triple  $(D, D_1, D_2)$  with boundary the given link such that  $(D, D_i)$  is unknotted i = 1, 2 and  $D_1$  transverse to  $D_2$  we have  $\varepsilon(D_1, D_2) = 0$ .

Proof. (1) is equivalent to (2): Notice that  $S - S_2$  deformation retracts on a *p*-sphere and that a generator of  $H_p(S-S_2)$  can be described as the restriction  $h|I^{p+1} \times 0 \to S - S_2$  where  $h: (I^{p+1+q}, 0 \times I^p) \to (S, S_2)$ is an embedding preserving orientation of both factors (since any two such are ambient isotopic by 4.20). Now let  $D_1$  be the given disc and  $p \in D_1 \cap S_2$ . Then by transversality we can find a *p*-sphere  $S_p = L_p(D_1)$ , which represents  $\varepsilon(p)$  times the generator of  $H_r(S-S_2)$  by definition. Then  $D_1 - \bigcup \{D_p | p \in D_1 \cap S_2\}$  represents a homology between  $S_1$  and  $\bigcup S_p$  and hence  $S_1$  represents  $\varepsilon(D_1, S_2)$  times the generator which implies the result (for more details on the interpretation of homology used here see Appendix A).

(3) We have  $S - S_2$  homotopy equivalent to  $D - D_2$  by inclusion. We can then interpret a generator of  $H_p(D - D_2)$  in a similar way to part (1) and the argument is now similar.

We now give the unlinking theorem which uses the Whitney lemma and which will be used inductively in the proof of the Whitney lemma:

**5.16 Theorem** (unlinking spheres). Let  $(S^r, S_1^p, S_2^q)$  be a link in the critical dimension and  $r \ge 4$ . Then  $(S, S_1, S_2)$  is unlinked if and only if it is homologically trivial.

*Example.* The link of 1-spheres in  $S^3$  (Fig. 40) is homologically trivial but not trivial.



Fig. 40

*Proof of 5.16.* The "only if" part is obvious. We prove the converse. Without loss of generality we can assume  $p \leq q$ . We have two cases:

 $p \leq 1$ . The case p=0 is easy so assume p=1,  $q \geq 2$ . Then  $S-S_2$  is homotopy equivalent to  $S^1$  and  $S_1$  is homologically trivial, and hence homotopically trivial, in  $S-S_2$ . The result follows from 5.9.

 $p \ge 2$  assuming 5.12. Choose a locally flat disc  $D_1$  with  $\partial D_1 = S_1$ , transverse to  $S_2$  by general position. Then  $\varepsilon(D_1, S_2) = 0$  by 5.15 and, by Corollary 5.13 applied to  $\mathring{D}_1, S_2 \subset S - S_1$ , we can assume  $D_1 \cap S_2 = \emptyset$ . Now let B be a regular neighbourhood of  $D_1$  in  $S - S_2$  then  $S_1 \subset \mathring{B}$ ,  $S_2 \subset S - B$  and the link is unlinked by 5.14.

*Proof of 5.12* (assuming 5.16 in dimensions < m). Join p and q by arcs  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , in P and Q respectively, which do not run through any other intersections.

Claim. There is a 2-disc  $D^2 \subset M$  with  $\partial D^2 = \alpha \cup \beta$  and  $D^2 \cap (P \cup Q) = \partial D^2$ . For if  $p \ge 3$  then by hypothesis there is a map  $f: D^2 \to M$  with  $f(\partial D^2) = \alpha \cup \beta$  and the result follows by general position. If p = 2 then take a regular neighbourhood of  $\beta$  in M, P, Q say  $N, N_0, N_1$ . Then there is a homeomorphism

$$h: (N, N_0, N_1) \cong (I^p \times I^{q-1} \times [-2, 2], I^p \times 0 \times (-1 \cup +1), 0 \times I^{q-1} \times [-2, 2])$$

by a similar argument to the one used in the proof of 5.10. Without loss we may assume that

$$h(\alpha \cap N_0) = [0, 1] \times 0 \times (-1 \cup +1).$$

Let  $\alpha' = \operatorname{cl}(\alpha - \alpha \cap N_0)$ ,

$$\beta' = h^{-1}(1 \times 0 \times [-1, 1]), \quad D_1^2 = h^{-1}([0, 1] \times 0 \times [-1, 1]).$$

The  $\alpha' \cup \beta' \subset M - Q$  and by hypothesis there is a map  $f: D^2 \to M - Q$ which by general position we can take embedded with interior disjoint from  $D_1^2$ . Then  $f(D^2) \cup D_1^2$  is the required disc.



Fig. 41

Now let  $(N, B_1, B_2)$  be a regular neighbourhood of  $D^2$  in (M, P, Q). Then  $(N, B_i)$  is an unknotted ball pair for i=1, 2 by 4.14. Consider the link  $(S, S_1, S_2) = \partial(N, B_1, B_2)$ . Then we have  $\varepsilon(B_1, B_2) = 0$  by hypothesis and hence  $(S, S_1, S_2)$  is unlinked by 5.15 and 5.16. Therefore there is an unknotted subball  $B'_1$  with  $\partial B'_1 = S_1$  and  $B'_1 \cap B_2 = \emptyset$  (this follows from the definition of the standard link and 4.4). Then by 4.4 and 3.22 there is an isotopy of N fixing  $\dot{N}$  carrying  $B_1$  to  $B'_1$  and extending to M by the identity gives the required isotopy of M.

#### Non-Simply-Connected Whitney Lemma

Now suppose that  $\pi_1(M) \neq 0$  and assume P and Q are simply connected and oriented. Choose a basepoint  $* \in M$ , a local orientation for M at \*and basepaths  $e_P, e_Q$  from \* to basepoints in P and Q respectively. Let  $p \in P \cap Q$  then define  $\varepsilon(p) = \pm g$ , where  $g \in \pi_1(M)$  is the element determined by the loop  $e_P \rho \tau e_Q$  where  $\rho$  is a path in P from the basepoint to p and  $\tau$ a path in Q from p to the basepoint of Q. The sign of  $\varepsilon(p)$  is determined by comparing the local orientation of M at p, which comes from transporting the local orientation at \* along  $e_P \rho$ , with the orientation given by 5.11. Then we can again define  $\varepsilon(P, Q) \in \mathbb{Z}(\pi_1(M))$  to be  $\sum {\varepsilon(p) | p \in P \cap Q}$ , where  $\mathbb{Z}(\pi)$  denotes the integral group ring of  $\pi$ .

The statement of the lemma now makes sense and the hypotheses read either

- (1)  $p \ge 3, q \ge 3$ , or
- (2)  $p=2, q \ge 3$ , and  $\pi_1(M) \cong \pi_1(M-Q)$ .

The proof is then virtually unaltered since  $\varepsilon(p) = -\varepsilon(q)$  ensures that  $\alpha \cup \beta$  is a trivial loop and hence that  $\alpha' \cup \beta'$  is trivial in M - Q if p = 2, and that  $\varepsilon(B_1, B_2) = 0$  as before.

# Final exercises

(1) Define the homological linking number of an oriented link as the image of the generator of  $\tilde{H}_p(S_1)$  in  $\tilde{H}_p(S-S_2)$  and check symmetry using an analogue of 5.15.

(2) Show that  $(\dot{I}^{p+1} \times 0, 0 \times \dot{I}^{q+1} \subset \dot{I}^{p+q+1})$  has linking number 1.

(3) Show by piping, using (2), how to construct links with arbitrary linking numbers.

(4) Show that two oriented links (in the critical dimension) are homeomorphic if and only if they have the same linking number, provided  $r \ge 4$ . And hence combining (3) and (4) that these links are classified by their linking numbers.

(5) Give an alternative proof of the Whitney lemma, without using links, as follows:

(a) construct a standard picture for a neighbourhood of D in M;

(b) identify the neighbourhood of D in M with the standard picture in three steps:

(i) identify a neighbourhood of  $\beta$  (exactly as in the given proof),

(ii) identify a neighbourhood of  $D - D_1$ ,

(iii) match these two identifications on observing that they meet in a "piping tube" (use uniqueness of piping tubes and model the proof on 5.10);

(c) find, in the standard picture, an unknotted disc  $B'_1$  with  $\partial B'_1 = \partial B_1$ and  $B'_1 \cap B_2 = \emptyset$ . Complete the proof as before.

(6) Hard. Notice that there is an element of choice in the arc  $\beta'$  in the case p=2 of the Whitney lemma, namely we can alter it by "twisting the  $I^2$  factor on its axis" see Fig. 42. Exploit this element of choice to show that it is not necessary to assume  $\pi_1(M) \cong \pi_1(M-Q)$ , which implies  $\gamma \sim 0$  in M - Q where  $\gamma$  is the loop "once round a transverse disc to Q", but merely that  $\gamma$  is in the centre of  $\pi_1(M-Q)$ . The idea is to span  $\alpha \cup \beta'$  by a disc which meets Q in a finite number of points and deduce that  $\alpha \cup \beta' \sim n\gamma$ . Then kill this "obstruction" by twisting  $\beta'$  around Q n times.



Fig. 42

Let  $W^w$  be a manifold and H a w-ball such that  $W \cap H \subset \partial W$ , and suppose that there is a homeomorphism  $h: I^p \times I^q \to H$ , such that  $h(I^p \times I^q) = H \cap W$ . Then we say that (H, h) is a handle of index p on W, or simply that "H is a p-handle".

Notice that  $W' = W \cup H$  is also a w-manifold, since a point has a neighbourhood which is the union of two balls meeting in a common face. If we write  $f = h | I^p \times I^q$  then we can identify  $W \cup H$  with  $W \cup_f I^w$  see 2.27(2); thus we say that W' is formed from W by attaching a handle by f. Conversely, given any embedding  $f: I^p \times I^q \to \partial W$ , then  $W' = W \cup_f I^w$  can be regarded as W with an attached p-handle in the obvious way. We write variously  $W' = W \cup H = W \cup H^{(p)} = W \cup_f H$ .

Terminology. Let (H, h) be a *p*-handle. Then we call  $h(I^p \times 0)$  the core of *H* and  $h(0 \times I^q)$  the cocore.  $h(\dot{I}^p \times 0)$  is the attaching sphere (a-sphere) and  $h(0 \times \dot{I}^q)$  the belt sphere (b-sphere). We also have the a-tube  $h(\dot{I}^p \times I^q)$  and the b-tube  $h(I^p \times \dot{I}^q)$ . Finally *h* is the characteristic map of *H*, and  $f = h|\dot{I}^p \times I^q$  the attaching map.



Fig. 43 shows a 1-handle on a 3-manifold. Note that a 0-handle on W is a w-disc disjoint from W and that, at the other extreme, a w-handle is a disc with its whole boundary equal to a component of  $\partial W$ .

The idea of a handle is that it gives an elementary way of enlarging a manifold. We shall see below that any manifold can be regarded as constructed from a ball by attaching handles; such a recipe is called a handle decomposition. However, before examining complete decompositions, we first examine the geometry of two handles added consecutively and we introduce the "handle moves"—reordering, cancelling, adding. The *h*-cobordism theorem will follow from these moves together with the Whitney lemma and a recipe for computing homology from a handle decomposition. After the proof of the *h*cobordism theorem, we will state and prove the two extensions mentioned in Chapter 1.

#### Handles on a Cobordism

Let  $(W, M_0, M_1)$  be a cobordism and H a handle on W then if  $H \cap W \subset M_1$  we say H is a handle on the cobordism. There is a new cobordism  $(W', M_0, \partial W' - M_0)$  which we say is obtained from the original cobordism by attaching a handle. For most of the applications of handles we will be concerned with handles on a cobordism; notice that when  $M_0 = \emptyset$  the concept reduces to that of a handle on a manifold.



Our first lemma shows that the result of attaching a handle depends only on the isotopy class of the attaching map:

**6.1 Lemma.** Let  $f, g: \dot{I}^p \times I^q \to M_1$  be ambient isotopic embeddings then there is a homeomorphism

$$h: W \cup_f H \to W \cup_g H$$

which is the identity outside a collar on  $M_1$  in W.

*Proof.* Let  $H_i: M_1 \to M_1$  be the covering isotopy and c a collar on  $M_1$ . Then  $H_i$  extends to W by 3.22 so that it is the identity outside c. Let  $H_1$  be the finishing homeomorphism and define

$$h = \begin{cases} H_1 & \text{on } W \\ \text{id} & \text{on } I^p \times I^q. \end{cases}$$

### **Reordering Handles**

For the next few sections we will be concerned with the result of attaching two handles consecutively. The notation  $W \cup H^{(r)} \cup H^{(s)}$  means that  $H^{(r)}$  is a *r*-handle on the cobordism W and  $H^{(s)}$  is an *s*-handle on the cobordism  $W \cup H^{(r)}$ .

**6.2 Reordering lemma.** Let  $W' = W \cup H^{(r)} \cup H^{(s)}$  with  $s \leq r$ . Then  $W' \cong W \cup H^{(s)} \cup H^{(r)}$  with  $H^{(r)}$  and  $H^{(s)}$  disjoint.

Proof. Let  $f: I^s \times I^{w-s} \to M_2$  be the attaching map for  $H^{(s)}$  where  $M_2 = \partial (W \cup H^{(r)}) - M_0$ . We will show how to ambient isotope f so as to make its image disjoint from  $H^{(r)}$ . Then we can clearly attach the handles in reverse order and the result follows from 6.1. Denote by  $S^{s-1}$  the *a*-sphere of  $H^{(s)}$  and by  $S^{w-r-1}$  the *b*-sphere of  $H^{(r)}$ . Then by general position in  $M_2^{w-1}$ , we can assume  $S^{s-1} \cap S^{w-r-1} = \emptyset$ . Now choose regular neighbourhoods  $N_a$  of  $S^{s-1}$  and  $N_b$  of  $S^{w-r-1}$  which are disjoint. Then observe that, by the S.N.T., the *a*-tube  $N'_a$  of  $H^{(s)}$  is also a regular neighbourhood of  $S^{s-1}$  in  $M_2$  so that we can assume  $N'_a = N_a$ . Similarly, the *b*-tube  $N'_b$  of  $H^{(r)}$  is a regular neighbourhood of  $S^{w-r-1}$  in  $M_2$  and we have an ambient isotopy of  $M_2$  carrying  $N_b$  onto  $N'_b$ . This isotopy carries  $N_a$  off  $N'_b$  and hence carries im f off  $H^{(r)}$  as required. See Fig. 45.



Fig. 45

# Handles of Adjacent Index

Suppose  $W' = W \cup H^{(r)} \cup H^{(r+1)}$  and let  $M_2 = \partial(W \cup H^{(r)}) - M_0$  (as in the last proof). Then the *b*-sphere  $S_1$  of  $H^{(r)}$  and the *a*-sphere  $S_2$  of  $H^{(r+1)}$ 

are in complementary dimension in  $M_2$ . So by a small general position shift of the attaching map of  $H^{(r+1)}$  we can assume that  $S_2$  meets  $S_1$  transversally in a finite number of points.



Fig. 46

We can then define the *incidence number*  $\varepsilon(H^{(r+1)}, H^{(r)})$  to be the intersection number  $\varepsilon(S_1, S_2)$ , as defined in the last chapter, since the characteristic maps give standard orientations to  $S_1, S_2$  and the *b*-tube of  $H^{(r)}$ . The next result gives an important homology interpretation of this incidence number and shows that it depends only on the homotopy class of the attaching map of  $H^{(r+1)}$ .

**6.3 Lemma.** Let  $q: W \cup H^{(r)} \to S^r$  be the (topological) map which sends W to a basepoint  $* \in S^r$ , collapses  $H^{(r)}$  onto its core  $D^r$  and identifies  $D^r/\partial D^r$  with  $S^r/*$ . Let  $g: S_2 \to S^r$  be the restriction of q, then g has homological degree  $\varepsilon(H^{(r+1)}, H^{(r)})$ .

Proof. Let f be the attaching map of  $H^{(r+1)}$ . The degree of g is unaffected by an isotopy of f. Consider a point  $p \in S_1 \cap S_2$ . Then the characteristic map h for  $H^{(r)}$  defines a standard transverse disc  $D_p =$  $h(I^r \times p)$  to  $S_1$  at p. By the definition of transversality and the disc theorem for pairs we can isotope  $S_2$  rel  $S_1$  to make it agree with  $D_p$  near p. Do this for each intersection then after a further isotopy which carries a standard neighbourhood of  $S_1$  onto the b-tube we have  $S_2 \cap H^{(r)} =$  $\bigcup \{D_p | p \in S_1 \cap S_2\}$ . Now  $q | D_p$  is the standard identification of  $D_p / \partial D_p$ with  $S^r/*$  and the result now follows easily from the definition of degree. See Appendix A. (Notice that the orientation of  $S_2$  agrees with  $D_p$  if and only if  $\varepsilon(p) = +1$ .)

# **Complementary Handles**

With the same notation as above, suppose that  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  intersect transversally in just one point p.  $H^{(r)}$  and  $H^{(r+1)}$  are then said to be complementary handles. The importance of such pairs is:

**6.4 Cancellation lemma.** Suppose  $W' = W \cup H^{(r)} \cup H^{(r+1)}$  with  $H^{(r)}$  and  $H^{(r+1)}$  complementary. Then there is a homeomorphism h:  $W' \to W$  which is the identity outside a neighbourhood of  $H^{(r)} \cup H^{(r+1)}$ .

*Proof.* As in the last proof we can assume  $S_2 \cap (b$ -tube of  $H^{(r)}) = D_p$ where  $S_1 \cap S_2 = p$ . Then, by the disc theorem for pairs again, we can assume that  $h_1(I^r \times B^r) = h_2(D^r \times I^r)$  where  $h_1$  is the characteristic map for  $H^{(r)}$ ,  $h_2$  that for  $H^{(r+1)}$  and  $B^r$ ,  $D^r$  are neighbourhoods of p in  $S_1, S_2$ respectively. Then by expanding a standard neighbourhood of  $S_1$  onto the b-tube of  $H^{(r)}$  we can assume that these are the only intersections of  $H^{(r)}$  and  $H^{(r+1)}$ . W' now shells to W in two steps:

(1) shell  $H^{(r)}$  from  $h_1(I^r \times (S_1 - \mathring{B}))$ ,

(2) shell  $H^{(r+1)}$  onto  $h_2((S_2 - \mathring{D}) \times I^r)$ .

The result now follows from 3.25.



Fig. 47

The next corollary says that handles which are algebraically complementary can be cancelled under extra conditions. This comes from a combination of the cancellation lemma and the Whitney lemma. Here we see why the theory only works well if  $w \ge 6$ : **6.5 Corollary.** Suppose  $W' = W \cup H^{(r)} \cup H^{(r+1)}$  and  $M_1$  is simplyconnected,  $w - r \ge 4$ ,  $r \ge 2$  and  $w \ge 6$ . Then if  $\varepsilon(H^{(r+1)}, H^{(r)}) = \pm 1$ ,  $W' \cong W$ .

*Proof.* Use the terminology of the last proof. Then  $\varepsilon(S_1, S_2) = \pm 1$ and we wish to use the Whitney lemma to find an ambient isotopy of  $S_2$  which carries  $S_2$  to  $S'_2$  with  $S_1 \cap S'_2 =$  one point. The result will then follow from 6.1 and 6.4. Now  $S_1$  is in codimension  $\ge 2$ ,  $S_2$  in codimension  $\ge 3$ . Moreover there are deformation retractions of  $M_2 - S_1$ and  $M_1 - (a$ -sphere of  $H^{(r)}$ ) onto  $M_1 - (a$ -tube of  $H^{(r)}$ ) given by using the product structure of  $I^r \times I^{w-s}$ . It follows from general position that  $M_1 - (a$ -sphere of  $H^{(r)}$ ) is simply-connected and hence the Whitney lemma applies.

In the proof of 6.4 we had  $H^{(r)} \cap H^{(r+1)}$  a (w-1)-ball so that  $H^{(r)} \cup H^{(r+1)}$  was a w-ball which, the reader can check, was attached to W by a face. (I.e. we could have done the shelling in one step instead of two.) We now reverse the argument and show how to regard a ball attached to W as a complementary pair of handles of any index:

**6.6 Introduction lemma.** Suppose  $W' = W \cup B^w$  where  $B^w \cap W = B \cap M_1$ = face  $B_1$  of B. Then we can write  $W' = W \cup H^{(r)} \cup H^{(r+1)}$  with  $H^{(r)}$  and  $H^{(r+1)}$  complementary.

Moreover if  $B^r \subset B_1$  is any locally flat disc then we can assume that the a-sphere of  $H^{(r)}$  is  $\partial B^r$  and that (a-sphere of  $H^{(r+1)}) \cap W \subset B^r$ .

Proof. Consider the "standard" complementary pair:

$$H_1 = I^r \times ([1, 3] \times I^{w - r - 1})$$
$$H_2 = I^{r+1} \times I^{w - r - 1}$$

with

$$H_1 \cup H_2 = I^r \times [-1, 3] \times I^{w-r-1}$$



where the core of  $H_1$  is  $I^r \times 2 \times 0$  and the core of  $H_2$  is  $I^{r+1} \times 0$ . Then  $H_1 \cup H_2$  is a ball with face

$$Q = \dot{I}^r \times [-1,3] \times I^{w-r-1} \cup I^r \times (-1) \times I^{w-r-1}$$

and if we identify the pair  $H_1 \cup H_2$ , Q with B,  $B_1$  we have the required result. For the last part of the lemma use the following exercise to identify  $B^r$  with  $\dot{I}^r \times [-1, 2] \cup I^r \times (-1)$ .

*Exercise.* Any two locally flat embeddings  $B^r \subset \mathring{B}^m$  are ambient isotopic by an isotopy of compact support.

*Hint*. Identify  $\mathring{B}$  with  $\mathbb{R}^m$  and use the proof of 4.16 to show  $B^r$  is ambient isotopic to a simplex.

# **Adding Handles**

We now show how to isotope the attaching map of an r-handle by "sliding" it over an adjacent r-handle. This has the result of adding (or subtracting) the incidence numbers of the r-handles with (r-1)-handles and is a key step in the algebraic simplification of handle decompositions.

Suppose  $W' = W \cup_f H^{(r)}$  and that  $M_1$  is simply-connected and  $r \ge 2$ . Then  $f | \dot{I}^r$  determines a class in  $\pi_r(M_1)$  which we will denote [f].

**6.7** Adding lemma. Suppose  $W' = W \cup_{f_1} H_1 \cup_{f_2} H_2$  with  $\operatorname{im}(f_1)$  and  $\operatorname{im}(f_2)$  disjoint and index  $H_1 = \operatorname{index} H_2 = r$ . Suppose that  $w - r \ge 2$ ,  $r \ge 2$  and  $M_1$  is simply-connected. Then there is an  $f_3$  isotopic to  $f_2$  such that  $\lfloor f_3 \rfloor = \lfloor f_2 \rfloor + \lfloor f_1 \rfloor$ , and  $\operatorname{im}(f_1) \cap \operatorname{im}(f_3) = \emptyset$ .

Alternatively we can find  $f_3$  so that  $[f_3] = [f_2] - [f_1]$ .

Proof. Let  $h_1$  be the characteristic map of  $H_1$  and  $c: \dot{I}^r \times \dot{I}^{w-r} \times I \rightarrow cl(M_2 - H_1 - H_2)$  a collar on the boundary of the *a*-tube of  $H_1$ , where  $M_2 = \partial(W \cup H_1) - M_0$  as usual (see Fig. 49).

Let  $S_1 = c(\dot{I}^r \times x \times 1)$  for some  $x \in \dot{I}^{w-r}$ . Then  $S_1$  bounds the embedded r-disc  $D_1 = c(\dot{I}^r \times x \times I) \cup h_1(\dot{I}^r \times x)$ . Define  $S_2 = a$ -sphere of  $H_2$ . Form  $S_3$ by piping  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  together in  $M_2$  (see Chapter 4) and define  $D = h^{-1}(I^{r-1} \times [-1, 1])$  with the notation of 5.10 (the "solid" piping tube). Then  $S_2$  is ambient isotopic to  $S_3$  by two cellular moves.

Move 1. Across the piping tube D.

Move 2. Across  $D_1$  (see Fig. 50).

Finally by a regular neighbourhood argument we can assume that  $f_3 = (\text{finishing homeomorphism of this isotopy}) \circ f_2$  is disjoint from  $f_1$ . The properties are clear – the sign in the formula comes from the two possible choices of orientation for  $S_1$ .



Fig. 49



Fig. 50

6.8 Remark. Suppose 
$$W = W_1 \cup H^{(r-1)}$$
 then by 6.3 we have  
 $\varepsilon(H_3, H^{(r-1)}) = \varepsilon(H_2, H^{(r-1)}) \pm \varepsilon(H_1, H^{(r-1)}).$ 

#### Handle Decompositions

Let W be a closed manifold. Then a handle decomposition of W is a presentation  $W = H_{*} \cup H_{*} \cup \dots \cup H$ 

where  $H_0$  is a w-ball and  $H_i$  is a handle on  $W_{i-1} = \bigcup \{H_j | j \le i-1\}$ . More generally, let  $(W, M_0, M_1)$  be a cobordism. Then a handle decomposition of W on  $M_0$  is a presentation

$$W = C_0 \cup H_1 \cup \cdots \cup H_r$$

where  $C_0$  is a collar on  $M_0$  in W (which is regarded as a cobordism in the natural way) and  $H_i$  is a handle on the cobordism

$$W_{i-1} = C_0 \cup \bigcup \{H_j | j \le i-1\}.$$

The idea behind a handle decomposition is that it gives an inductive procedure for constructing W from the trivial cobordism.

Now by the collaring theorem we can add a collar  $C_i$  to  $M_i$  without altering W and we have the symmetrical decomposition

$$W = C_0 \cup H_1 \cup \cdots \cup H_t \cup C_1.$$

In this case, if we define,  $W_{i+1}^c = C_1 \cup \bigcup \{H_j | j \ge i+1\}$  then we see that  $H_i$  can be regarded as a handle  $H_i^*$  on  $W_{i+1}^c$  with characteristic map  $h_i^* = h_i \circ t$ . Where t is the automorphism of  $I^p \times I^q$  which interchanges the first p coordinates with the last q. So we have the dual decomposition

$$W = C_1 \cup H_1^* \cup \cdots \cup H_1^* \cup C_0$$

of W on  $M_1$ . Notice that index  $(H_i^*) = w$ -index  $H_i$  and that the *a*-tube of  $H_i$  is the *b*-tube of  $H_i^*$ .

A decomposition is *nice* if the index of  $H_{i+1} \ge \text{index } H_i$  for each *i* and if handles of the same index are disjoint. It follows from the reordering lemma, applied to successive pairs of handles, that any decomposition gives rise to a nice decomposition which has the same number of handles of each index.

We next prove existence of handle decompositions. Let  $(K, K_0)$  be a triangulation of  $(W, M_0)$  and let  $A_1, \ldots, A_r$  be the simplexes of  $K-K_0$  taken in order of increasing dimension. Let K'' be a second derived and define

$$C_0 = |N(K_0, K'')|, \quad A_i^{**} = |\operatorname{st}(a_i, K'')|.$$

6.9 Proposition.

$$W = C_0 \cup A_1^{**} \cup \cdots \cup A_r^{**}$$

is a handle decomposition of W on  $M_0$  with index  $(A_i^{**}) = \dim(A_i)$ .



*Proof.*  $C_0$  is a collar by 3.9. We have to find a characteristic map  $h_i$  for  $A_i^{**}$  as a handle on  $W_{i-1} = C_0 \cup \bigcup \{A_i^{**} | j \leq i-1\}$ . Now there is a simplicial isomorphism  $f_i: A_i^{**} \to \operatorname{st}(a_i, K')'$  defined by pseudo-radial projection from  $a_i$  (as in Exercise 7 at the end of Chapter 2) and this carries  $A_i^{**} \cap W_{i-1}$  onto  $N = |N(A_i, \operatorname{lk}(a_i, K')'|$  which is a derived neighbourhood and hence regular. Also  $A_i \subset \operatorname{st}(A_i, K)$  is an unknotted ball pair by 4.3 since it is the join of  $(A_i, A_i)$  with  $(\operatorname{lk}(A_i, K), \emptyset)$ .

It follows that we can choose a homeomorphism  $g_i: I^p \times I^q \to \text{st}(A_i, K)$ so that  $g_i(I^p \times 0) = A_i$  where dim  $A_i = p$  and p + q = w; and by the S.N.T. we can assume  $g_i(I^p \times I^q) = N$ . Therefore  $h_i = f_i^{-1} \circ g_i$  is a suitable characteristic map for  $A_i^{**}$  (see Fig. 51).

### The CW Complex Associated with a Decomposition

Notice that, in the last proof, if we shrink all the handles back onto their cores we recover the complex K. More generally given any decomposition of W on  $M_0$  we can construct a CW complex K attached to  $M_0$  of the same homotopy type as W and with one p-cell for each p-handle as follows:

Suppose inductively that we have defined  $K_{i-1}$  and a homotopy equivalence  $K_{i-1} = K_{i-1}$ 

$$l_{i-1}: W_{i-1} \to K_{i-1}, \quad \text{rel}\, M_0.$$

Let  $r_i: H_i \to \operatorname{core}(H_i) \cup a$ -tube $(H_i)$  be the obvious deformation retraction. Then  $W_{i-1} \cup_{f_i} H_i$  is homotopy equivalent with  $K_{i-1} \cup_{g_i} H_i$ , where  $g_i = l_{i-1} \circ f_i$ , which deformation retracts (by  $l_{i-1} \circ r_i$ ) on  $K_{i-1} \cup_{g_i} I^p$  (index  $H_i = p$ ). Then  $K_i = K_{i-1} \cup_{g_i} I^p$  is a cell complex  $K_{i-1} \cup$  attached *p*-cell, and we have constructed  $l_i: W_i \to K_i$ .

If the decomposition was nice, the cells will be attached in order of increasing dimension and K will be a CW complex.

Now let  $H^{(r)}$ ,  $H^{(r+1)}$  be handles in the decomposition and  $e^r$ ,  $e^{r+1}$  the corresponding cells of K. Then by niceness we can assume  $H^{(r)}$ ,  $H^{(r+1)}$  are consecutive and we have the incidence number  $\varepsilon(H^{(r+1)}, H^{(r)})$  defined. It follows at once from 6.3 and the definition of incidence numbers in a CW complex (Appendix A) that  $\varepsilon(H^{(r+1)}, H^{(r)}) = \varepsilon(e^{r+1}, e^r)$ . This observation is very important because it means that we can compute  $H_*(W, M_0)$  from the list of incidence numbers of a handle decomposition or conversely, as we shall use it in the proof of the h-cobordism theorem, deduce facts about incidence numbers from homological hypotheses.

6.10 Exercise. Let  $W = C_0 \cup H_1 \cup \cdots \cup H_i$  be a nice decomposition and  $W^{(s)} = C_0 \cup \{\} \{H_i^{(p)} | p \leq s\}$ . Then we have

$$\pi_i(W, W^{(s)}) = 0 \quad \text{for } i \leq s$$
  
$$\pi_i(W, M^{(s)}) = 0 \quad \text{for } i \leq s, \ n-s-1$$

where  $M^{(s)} = \partial W^{(s)} - M_0$ .

*Hint.* Use the *CW* complexes associated to the decomposition and its dual. Or alternatively use a direct argument and general position.

#### The Duality Theorems

Let  $W = C_0 \cup H_1 \cup \cdots \cup H_r \cup C_1$  be a nice symmetrical decomposition and let K be the associated CW complex. Then the dual decomposition is also nice and we obtain the *dual complex* K\* attached to  $M_1$ . Now let  $H^{(r)}$ ,  $H^{(r+1)}$  be successive handles and  $H^{(w-r)}$ ,  $H^{(w-r-1)}$  their duals and  $e^r$ ,  $e^{r+1}$ ,  $e^{w-r}$ ,  $e^{w-r-1}$  the corresponding cells of K and K\*. Then since the *a*-sphere of  $H^{(w-r)} = b$ -sphere of  $H^{(r)}$  and similarly for  $H^{(r+1)}$  we have

$$\varepsilon(H^{(r+1)}, H^{(r)}) = \varepsilon(H^{(w-r)}, H^{(w-r-1)}) \mod 2$$

which implies

$$\varepsilon(e^{r+1}, e^r) = \varepsilon(e^{w-r}, e^{w-r-1}) \mod 2.$$

It follows that (cf. Appendix A) there is an isomorphism between the chain complex of K and the cochain complex of  $K^*$  with  $\mathbb{Z}_2$ -coefficients and we have

6.11 Theorem.  $H_*(W, M_0; \mathbb{Z}_2) \cong H^{w-*}(W, M_1; \mathbb{Z}_2)$ .

Now suppose W is orientable. Then each "level" manifold  $M_i = \partial W_i - M_0$  is orientable and we have (with the notation of 6.3)  $\varepsilon(S_1, S_2) = \pm \varepsilon(S_2, S_1)$  and hence  $\varepsilon(e^{r+1}, e^r) = \pm \varepsilon(e^{w-r}, e^{w-r-1})$ . But since  $\varepsilon(S_1, S_2) = (-1)^{r(w-r-1)} \varepsilon(S_2, S_1)$  in  $M_i$ , and orientation of  $H = (-1)^{r(w-r)}$  orientation of  $H^*$ , the signs are in fact all positive, and we have

### 6.12 Theorem. If W is orientable then

$$H_*(W, M_0; \mathbb{Z}) \cong H^{w-*}(W, M_1; \mathbb{Z}).$$

The case  $M_0 = M_1 = \emptyset$  of these theorems is usually called "Poincaré duality" and the case  $M_0 = \emptyset$ , "Lefschetz duality".

### **Simplifying Handle Decompositions**

Now we come to the heart of the proof of the h-cobordism theorem, namely using algebraic hypotheses to modify a decomposition.

**6.13 Lemma** (elimination of 0-handles). Suppose given a handle decomposition of W on  $M_0$  with  $i_i$  t-handles for each t. Suppose that each component of W meets  $M_0$ . Then there is another decomposition with no 0-handles,  $(i_1 - i_0)$  1-handles and  $i_i$  t-handles for t > 1.

*Proof.* By the reordering lemma we can assume that indices of handles increase. Now attaching a handle of index 2 does not affect connectivity. It follows that each 0-handle is connected to either another 0-handle or else to  $C_0$  by a 1-handle. But a 0-handle with a 1-handle attached to it by one end only is a complementary pair which can be cancelled. It follows that each 0-handle can be cancelled with a suitable 1-handle.



Fig. 52

**6.14 Corollary.** Suppose W is connected then W has a handle decomposition on  $M_0$  with

- (i) no 0- or w-handles if  $M_0, M_1 \neq \emptyset$
- (ii) one 0-handle and no w-handles if  $M_0 = \emptyset$ ,  $M_1 \neq \emptyset$
- (iii) no 0-handles and one w-handle if  $M_0 \neq \emptyset$ ,  $M_1 = \emptyset$
- (iv) one 0-handle and one w-handle if  $M_0 = M_1 = \emptyset$ .

*Proof.* For (i) apply 6.13 to a decomposition and the dual decomposition. For (ii) let  $H_0 \cup H_1 \cup \cdots \cup H_t$  be a decomposition. Then  $H_0$  is a 0-handle and we can apply (i) to  $C_0 \cup H_1 \cup \cdots \cup H_t$  where  $C_0$  is a collar on  $\partial H_0$  in  $H_0$ . Parts (iii) and (iv) follow similarly.

**6.15** Lemma (elimination of 1-handles). Suppose W is connected and we are given a handle decomposition of W on  $M_0$  with no 0-handles and  $i_t$  t-handles for t > 0. Suppose that  $\pi_1(W, M_0) = 0$ , and  $w \ge 6$ . Then there is another decomposition with  $i_t$  t-handles for  $t \ne 1, 3$ , no 1-handles and  $(i_1 + i_3)$  3-handles.

*Proof.* We can assume the decomposition is nice. Let  $(H_1, h_1)$  be a typical 1-handle. We will show how to "replace"  $H_1$  by a 3-handle and the result then follows by induction. Let  $\alpha = h_1(I^1 \times x)$  be an arc in the b-tube of  $H_1$  "parallel" to the core. By general position and

regular neighbourhoods (as in 6.2) we can assume  $\alpha$  misses the 2-handles and hence lies in  $M^{(2)} = \partial W^{(2)} - M_0$ . Now by 6.10  $\pi_1(W^{(2)}, C_0) = 0$  and we can find a map  $f: D^2 \to W^{(2)}$  with  $f(\partial D^2) = \alpha \cup \beta$  where  $\beta$  lies in  $C_0$ . (The use of 6.10 simply involves pushing f off the cocores of the higher dimensional handles by general position.) Then we can again assume (as in 6.2) that  $\beta$  is embedded in  $M^{(2)}$  disjoint from all 1- and 2-handles. Finally homotop f rel  $\partial D^2$  into  $M^{(2)}$  by 6.10 (i.e. push off the cores of the 1- and 2-handles by general position) and, by a final application of general position, replace f by a locally flat embedded disc  $D^2$ . Now use 6.6 to introduce a complementary 2 and 3 handle pair  $(H_2, H_3)$ along a neighbourhood of  $D^2$  so that the *a*-sphere of  $H_2$  is  $\partial D^2$ . Then  $(H_1, H_2)$  are complementary and can be cancelled, and we have "replaced"  $H_1$  by  $H_3$ , as required, see Fig. 53.



*Remark.* Lemma 6.15 works if w = 5. The only part of our proof which fails is the final appeal to general position. – We would merely get a locally flat embedding off a finite set which then has to be "piped" over the edge (as in 5.9). The proof of the lemma generalises to "replace" s-handles by (s+2)-handles when  $\pi_s(W, M_0) = 0$ ,  $M_0$  is connected and  $w \ge 2s+3$ . This result will not be needed.

**6.16** Lemma (elimination of s-handles,  $2 \le s \le w - 4$ ). Suppose given a handle decomposition of W on  $M_0$  with no handles of index < s and  $i_t$  handles of index t for  $t \ge s$ . Then, if  $M_0$  is simply-connected  $2 \le s \le w - 4$ ,  $w \ge 6$  and  $H_s(W, M_0) = 0$ , we can find a new decomposition with the same number of t-handles for  $t \ne s$ , s + 1, with no s-handles and with  $(i_{s+1} - i_s)$  (s+1)-handles.

*Proof.* We can assume that the decomposition is nice and then we can compute  $H_*(W, M_0)$  from the incidence numbers. Let  $H^{(s)}$  be a typical s-handle. We show how to eliminate  $H^{(s)}$  and the result follows

by induction. Let  $H_i^{(s+1)}$  be the (s+1)-handles and  $n_i = \varepsilon(H_i^{(s+1)}, H^{(s)})$ . Use 6.7 to add the (s+1)-handles so as to reduce  $\sum |n_i|$  as far as possible. For example suppose  $n_1, n_2 \neq 0$ ,  $|n_1| \ge |n_2|$ , then replace by  $n_1, n_1 \pm n_2$  and reduce  $\sum |n_i|$ . Finally only  $n_1$  say is non-zero and since  $H_s(W, M_0) = 0$  we must have  $n_1 = \pm 1$ .  $H^{(s)}$  and  $H_1^{(s+1)}$  are then algebraically complementary and the result follows from 6.5.

# Proof of the *h*-Cobordism Theorem

**6.17** *h*-cobordism theorem. Let  $(W, M_0, M_1)$  be a simply-connected *h*-cobordism (i.e.  $M_0 \subset W$  and  $M_1 \subset W$  are both homotopy equivalences). Then, if  $w \ge 6, W \cong M_0 \times I$ .

*Proof.* Choose a decomposition  $W = C_0 \cup H_1 \cup \cdots \cup H_i \cup C_1$ . We will show how to eliminate all the  $H_i$  and then  $W \cong C_0 \cup C_1$  and the result is proved. Now by 6.13 and 6.15 we can assume there are no 0- or 1-handles, and, applying these results to the dual decomposition, that there are no w- or (w-1)-handles. Now use 6.16 to eliminate all the s-handles for  $2 \le s \le w-4$  and then we have only (w-3)- and (w-2)-handles. Now apply 6.16 to the dual decomposition to eliminate the (w-2)-handles and we then have only (w-3)-handles. But  $H_{w-3}(W, M_0) = 0$ , which implies that there are no (w-3)-handles left.

Remark. We actually only used the hypotheses

(1) 
$$\pi_1(W, M_0) = \pi_1(W, M_1) = 0,$$

- (2) W is simply-connected,
- (3)  $H_*(W, M_0) = 0$ ,
- (4)  $H_*(W, M_1) = 0.$

But (4) follows from (3) and duality (see appendix A.4) so that we have proved the stronger form of the theorem (see end of Chapter 1).

# The Relative Case

By a cobordism with boundary we mean a compact w-manifold W together with two disjoint (w-1)-dimensional submanifolds,  $M_0, M_1 \subset \partial W$ . Then  $V = cl(\partial W - M_0 - M_1)$  is a cobordism between  $\partial M_0$  and  $\partial M_1$  (see Fig. 54): W is an h-cobordism if  $M_0 \subset W$ ,  $M_1 \subset W$ ,  $\partial M_0 \subset V$ ,  $\partial M_1 \subset V$  are all homotopy equivalences.

**6.18 Relative h-cobordism theorem.** Let  $(W, M_0, M_1)$  be a simplyconnected h-cobordism with boundary and suppose  $V \cong M_0 \times I$  and  $w \ge 6$ . Then  $(W, V) \cong (M_0, \partial M_0) \times I$ . Remarks

(1) By assuming that V is a product we avoid having to put conditions on V. Combining 6.18 with the absolute theorem yields a theorem when V is not known already to be a product.

(2) By uniqueness of collars (see end of Chapter 4) we can assume that the product structure on W extends the given structure on V.

*Proof.* Let  $(K, K_0)$  be a triangulation of  $(W, M_0)$ . Then by 3.17 and hypothesis we can assume

$$V = \left| N \left( \partial K_0^{\prime\prime}, \left( \partial K - K_0 \right)^{\prime\prime} \right) \right|.$$

Then if we let  $A_1, \ldots, A_t$  be the simplexes of K not in  $K_0$  we have

 $W = C_0 \cup A_1^{**} \cup \cdots \cup A_i^{**}$ 

where  $C_0 = |N(K_0, K'')|$ . Then  $C_0$  is a collar which restricts on  $M_0$  to V and we have a "handle decomposition" of W on  $M_0$  rel V.



Fig. 55

By the collaring theorem we can assume that this decomposition is symmetrical and it only remains to observe that each of the lemmas used in the proof of the *h*-cobordism theorem can be applied in this situation and that the resulting homeomorphisms can all be assumed to be fixed on V. Therefore  $W \cong C_0 \cup C_1$  rel V which implies the result.

*Remark.* As with the absolute theorem we have only used the simple connectivity of W,  $M_0$  and  $M_1$ ,  $H_*(W, M_0) = 0$ , and duality (which has a similar statement and proof).

### The Non-Simply-Connected Case

Let W be a connected h-cobordism; then there is defined a torsion element  $\tau(W, M_0) \in Wh(\pi_1(W))$ , see Appendix B.

**6.19** s-cobordism theorem. Let  $(W, M_0, M_1)$  be a connected h-cobordism and  $w \ge 6$ . Then  $W \cong M_0 \times I$  if and only if  $\tau(W, M_0) = 0$ .

Remarks

(1) The "only if" part follows from the properties of torsion, so we prove the "if" part.

(2) h-cobordisms may be constructed with any given torsion (see the end of the chapter).

(3) 6.18 and 6.19 can be combined to give a relative s-cobordism theorem which is proved by combining the proofs.

The geometry of the proof of 6.19 is the same as that for the simplyconnected case, the main difference being the need to take care with base-points. A "handle" will now mean a *based* handle i.e. we have a specific base-path from the base point of the *a*-sphere to the basepoint of  $M_0$ . (This allows us to regard a *b*-sphere as based by using a standard path between the two spheres.)

The reordering lemma and the notion of complementary handles are unchanged as are the cancellation and introduction lemmas. However we need a non-simply-connected version of Corollary 6.5. Incidence numbers are defined in  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$ , where  $\pi = \pi_1(W)$ , as in the last chapter.

**6.20** Corollary to 6.4. Suppose  $W' = W \cup H^{(r)} \cup H^{(r+1)}$  and  $\pi_1(M_1) \cong \pi_1(M_2) \cong \pi_1(W)$  where  $M_2 = \partial(W \cup H^{(r)}) - M_0$  and that  $2 \le r \le w - 4$ . Then if  $\varepsilon(H^{(r+1)}, H^{(r)}) = \pm g$ , where  $g \in \pi$ ,  $W' \cong W$ .

The proof is similar to 6.5 using the non-simply-connected Whitney lemma.

The adding lemma, 6.7, needs to be generalised by allowing  $[f_3] = [f_2] \pm [f_1]^g$ , where  $g \in \pi_1(M_1)$  acts in the usual way. This is proved by choosing the piping tube in a neighbourhood of an arc  $\alpha$  which represents g.

Existence of decompositions follows as before and, by a generalisation of 6.3, proved by lifting to the universal cover, we can compute  $H_*(\tilde{W}, \tilde{M}_0)$  as a  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$  module from the incidence numbers when  $\pi_1(W) \cong \pi_1(M_0)$ . Here  $\tilde{X}$  denotes the universal cover of X.

Proof of 6.19. The idea is the same-start with a decomposition and eliminate all the handles, but the method is rather different. We start as before by eliminating 0-, 1-, w-, and (w-1)-handles using Lemmas 6.13 and 6.15. Then the idea is to "move" all the handles into two adjacent dimensions. Suppose  $H^{(r)}$  is the first handle with  $r \ge 2$  and  $w-r \ge 4$ . We show how to replace  $H^{(r)}$  by an (r+2)-handle  $H^{(r+2)}$ . Denote the incidence numbers  $\varepsilon(H_i^{(r+1)}, H^{(r)})$  by  $t_i, t_i \in \mathbb{Z} \pi$ , where  $H_i^{(r+1)}$ are the (r+1)-handles. Since  $H_r(\tilde{W}, \tilde{M}) = 0$  we must have some linear combination  $\sum n_i t_i = 1$ ,  $n_i \in \mathbb{Z} \pi$ . Introduce a complementary pair  $(H^{(r+2)}, H^{(r+1)})$ . Then by adding suitable combinations of the  $H_i^{(r+1)}$  to  $H^{(r+1)}$  we can make  $\varepsilon(H^{(r+1)}, H^{(r)}) = \sum n_i t_i = 1$ . We can then cancel  $H^{(r+1)}$  with  $H^{(r)}$  by Corollary 6.20. This "replaces"  $H^{(r)}$  by  $H^{(r+2)}$ .

Finally there are handles left of indices (w-3) and (w-2) only, or dually of indices 2 and 3 only. Let A be the matrix over  $\mathbb{Z} \pi$  determined

by the incidence numbers of  $H_i^{(3)}$  with  $H_j^{(2)}$ . Since  $H_*(\tilde{W}, \tilde{M}) = 0$ , A is an invertible  $p \times p$  matrix for some p. A determines an element  $\tau = \tau(W, M) \in Wh(\pi)$  (see Appendix B) which measures the obstruction to changing A to the empty matrix by a sequence of the following moves: (1) Replace A by  $\begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  or vice versa. (2) Add a multiple of one row to another. (3) Reorder rows or columns. (4) Multiply a row by an element of  $\pi$  or by -1.

However each of these moves can be realised by a handle operation: (1) Introduce or cancel a pair of (algebraically) complementary handles. (2) Add handles. (3) Renumber handles. (4) Change the base-path or orientation of a handle.

Hence if  $\tau = 0$  we can cancel all the 2- and 3-handles and W is a product, as required.

# Constructing *h*-Cobordisms

Finally, to end the chapter, we show how to construct *h*-cobordisms of any given torsion. Let  $M^n$  be a given manifold with  $n \ge 3$  and  $\tau \in Wh(\pi)$ ,  $\pi = \pi_1(M)$ , a given element. Then  $\tau$  is determined by an invertible  $p \times p$  matrix A with entries in  $\mathbb{Z}(\pi)$ . Construct a cobordism W with handles of indices 2 and 3 only and matrix (of the last proof) equal to A as follows:

(1) Start with the trivial cobordism  $M \times I$  and attach p complementary (2, 3) pairs,  $(H_i^{(2)}, H_i^{(3)})$ , i = 1, 2, ..., p.

(2) Attach also p complementary (3, 4) pairs by balls disjoint from the (2, 3) pairs. Forget the 4-handles and call the new 3-handles  $\overline{H}_i$ , i=1, 2, ..., p.

(3) Use the adding lemma to add to each  $\overline{H}_i^{(3)}$  a suitable linear combination of the  $H_j^{(3)}$  so as to realise the *i*-th row of *A*. In other words make  $\varepsilon(\overline{H}_i^{(3)}, H_j^{(2)}) = A_{ij}$ .

(4) Now forget the  $H_j^{(3)}$ . Then  $W = M \times I \cup \{H_i^{(2)}\} \cup \{\overline{H}_j^{(3)}\}$  is the required cobordism.

Notice that the construction actually embeds W in the trivial cobordism  $M \times I \cong M \times I \cup$  all the attached handles.

*Exercise*. If  $n \ge 4$  then W is an h-cobordism.

*Hint.* Invertibility of A implies  $H_*(\tilde{W}, \tilde{M}) = 0$ . Use 6.10 to check the  $\pi_1($ ) hypotheses.

**6.21** Exercise (classification of *h*-cobordisms). Prove that there is a one-one correspondence between  $Wh(\pi)$  and homeomorphism classes (rel *M*) of *h*-cobordisms (*W*, *M*, *M'*) for  $n \ge 5$ , by observing: (1) Any *h*-cobordism embeds in an *s*-cobordism and hence in any other *h*-cobordism. (2) If  $W_1 \subset W$  and  $\tau(W, M) = \tau(W_1, M)$  then  $cl(W - W_1)$  is an *s*-cobordism.

# **Chapter 7. Applications**

We give five applications of handle theory:

- (1) Unknotting balls and spheres in codimension  $\geq 3$ .
- (2) A criterion for unknotting in codimension 2.
- (3) A weak 5-dimensional h-cobordism and Poincaré theorem.
- (4) Engulfing.
- (5) Embedding manifolds.

# Unknotting Balls and Spheres in Codimension $\geq 3$

- 7.1 Theorem. Any proper (q, n)-ball or sphere pair is unknotted if  $q n \ge 3$ . For the following corollaries, see Chapter 4.
- **7.2 Corollary.** Any proper (q, n)-manifold pair is locally flat provided  $q-n \ge 3$ .
- **7.3 Corollary.** Any proper isotopy of manifolds is ambient in codimension  $\geq 3$ .

We will deduce the theorem from two lemmas:

**7.4** Lemma. The theorem is true for locally flat (q, n)-ball pairs with  $q \ge 6$ .



Fig. 56

*Proof.* Let N be a regular neighbourhood of  $B^n$  in  $B^q$ , then  $(N, B^n)$  is an unknotted ball pair by 4.14. Define  $W = cl(B^q - N)$ ,  $M_0 = W \cap N$ ; choose a collar C on  $M_0$  in  $cl(\partial W - M_0)$  and define  $M_1 = cl(\partial W - (M_0 \cup C))$ . Then  $(W, M_0, M_1)$  is a cobordism with boundary C and we claim that it is a simply-connected h-cobordism. First  $W, M_0, M_1$  are all simply-connected by general position, since  $W \simeq B^q - B^n$ ,  $M_0 \simeq \partial N - \partial B^n$ ,  $M_1 \simeq \partial B^q - \partial B^n$ , and  $B^n$ ,  $\partial B^n$  are in codimension  $\ge 3$ . Secondly

$$\begin{aligned} H_*(B^q, N) &\cong H_*(B^q, B^n) = 0 \quad \text{by homotopy} \\ &\cong H_*(W, M_0) \quad \text{by excision.} \end{aligned}$$

It then follows from 6.18 that  $W \cong M_0 \times I$  and hence  $(B^q, B^n)$  is obtained from the unknotted pair  $(N, B^n)$  by gluing a collar on  $M_0$  and is therefore unknotted by 2.25.

**7.5 Lemma.** Let (q-n) be fixed then (q, n)-ball pairs unknot for  $q \leq t \Leftrightarrow (q, n)$ -sphere pairs unknot for  $q \leq t$ .

*Proof.* Assume spheres unknot, then given a (q, n)-ball pair, by hypothesis its boundary is unknotted and we can glue on an unknotted ball pair to form a sphere pair, which is unknotted by hypothesis. So the original pair is obtained from an unknotted sphere pair by removing an unknotted ball pair and so the result follows from 4.9.

Conversely, suppose balls unknot and a sphere pair is given; remove a small ball pair, to form a ball pair. Then by hypothesis the original pair is obtained by gluing two unknotted ball pairs along their boundaries and the result is unknotted by 4.3.

Proof of 7.1. By induction on q. By 5.6 sphere pairs unknot for  $q \leq 5$  and hence, by 7.5, ball pairs unknot for  $q \leq 5$ . Now suppose the theorem is true for  $q \leq t-1$  and  $(B', B^m)$  a given pair with  $t \geq 6$ ,  $t-m \geq 3$ . Then looking at links we see that  $B^m$  is locally flat in B' and hence the pair is unknotted by 7.4. It follows from 7.5 that any (t, m)-sphere pair is unknotted and the induction step is established.

# A Criterion for Unknotting in Codimension 2

We will need to assume that  $Wh(\mathbb{Z})=0$  (see bibliography) so that any *h*-cobordism between manifolds with fundamental group  $\mathbb{Z}$  is simple.

**7.6 Theorem.** Let  $S^{q,n}$  be a proper locally flat sphere pair with q-n=2,  $q \ge 6$ . Then the pair is unknotted if and only if  $S^q - S^n$  has the homotopy type of a circle.

# Remarks

(1) The "only if" part is obvious.

(2) The theorem is also known for q=3 when it follows from the notorious Dehn lemma and for q=5 by "surgery" (see bibliography).

**Proof.** Let  $B^{q,n}$  be the result of removing an unknotted ball pair then by 4.3 it suffices to show  $B^{q,n}$  is unknotted. Define  $N, W, M_0, C, M_1$ as in the proof of 7.4. Then  $W \simeq S^1$  by hypothesis,  $M_0, M_1 \simeq S^1$  since  $(\partial N, \partial B^n)$  and  $(\partial B^q, \partial B^n)$  are unknotted. Therefore W is an *h*-cobordism, hence an *s*-cobordism, hence (by the relative *s*-cobordism theorem) a product. Therefore  $B^{q,n}$  is unknotted as in 7.4.

#### Weak 5-Dimensional Theorems

7.7 Weak 5-dimensional *h*-cobordism theorem. Let  $(W^5, M_0, M_1)$  be a simply-connected *h*-cobordism between manifolds without boundary. Then  $(W - M_1) \cong M_0 \times [0, 1)$ .

We say W is *invertible* if there is a cobordism  $(\overline{W}, M_1, M_2)$  such that  $W \cup_{M_1} \overline{W} \cong M_0 \times I$ .

**7.8 Lemma.** W is invertible with inverse  $\overline{W} = W$  with ends reversed.

*Proof.* Consider  $W \times I$  as a cobordism between the manifolds with boundary  $M_0 \times I$  and  $W' = (W \times 0 \cup M_1 \times I \cup W \times 1) - \text{collar}$ .



Fig. 57

By the relative 6-dimensional *h*-cobordism theorem we have  $W' \cong M_0 \times I$  so that  $W \times 0$  is invertible with inverse  $M_1 \times I \cup W \times 1 \cong \overline{W}$ , as required.

*Proof of 7.7.* By collaring  $W \cong W \cup M_1 \times I$  and hence

$$W - M_1 \cong W \cup M_1 \times [0, 1).$$

Now consider

$$\overline{W} = W \cup_{M_1} \overline{W} \cup_{M_0} W \cup_{M_1} \overline{W} \dots$$

then this is

 $M_0 \times I \cup M_0 \times I \cup \cdots$  by 7.8  $\cong M_0 \times [0, 1)$ .

But by symmetry W is the inverse to  $\overline{W}$  hence  $\overline{W} \cup_{M_0} W = M_1 \times I$  and so

$$\overline{W} \cong W \cup M_1 \times [0, 1) \quad \text{(by pairing the other way)} \\ \cong W - M_1 \qquad \text{by the first remark.}$$

*Remark.* Lemma 7.8 (and hence Theorem 7.7) is also true without the hypothesis of simple connectivity (and for any dimension >5 as well). The proof is similar to our proof but before starting one has to add a cobordism to W to kill torsion (by existence of cobordisms with arbitrary torsion). This of course does not affect invertibility.

**7.9 Corollary** (weak Poincaré theorem). Let  $M^5$  be a closed manifold of the homotopy type of  $S^5$ . Then  $M^5$  is topologically homeomorphic with  $S^5$ .

**Proof.** Let  $D_1^5 \subset D_2^5 \subset M^5$  be concentric discs and let  $D_3^5 \subset M - D_2$  be another. Then  $M - (D_1 \cup D_3) \cong \partial D_3 \times [0, 1)$  by 7.7, and the argument in Chapter 1. Hence  $M^5$  is covered by two discs  $D_2$  and  $D_4 = D_3 \cup \partial D_3 \times [0, t]$ for suitable t. Now  $\partial D_4$  is a locally flat  $S^4$  embedded in  $D_2$  and hence bounds a topological ball  $D'_2$  in  $D_2$  by 3.39. Therefore  $M^5 = D_4 \cup D'_2$  is the union of two topological balls sewn along their boundaries and hence is a topological sphere as required.

# Engulfing

Let M be an *i*-connected manifold (i.e. each map  $f: K \to M$  can be homotoped to zero if dim  $K \leq i$ ) and  $X \subset M$  a polyhedron of dimension  $\leq i$ . We want to conclude that X is contained in a ball in M and then we say X can be *engulfed* in M.

More generally suppose  $(W, M_0, M_1)$  is a cobordism and  $(W, M_0)$  is *i*-connected (i.e. each map  $f: K \to W$  can be homotoped into  $M_0$  where dimension  $K \leq i$ ). Then we wish to conclude that  $X^i \subset W$  is contained in a collar on  $M_0$ , and then say X can be *engulfed from*  $M_0$ .

**7.10 Engulfing theorem.** Let W be a cobordism (without boundary) and  $X^i \subset W$ . Then X can be engulfed from  $M_0$  provided  $(W, M_0)$  is i-connected and

(1)  $w \ge 6, w - i \le 3 \text{ or}$ 

- (2) w = 4, 5, i = 1 or
- (3) w = 5, i = 2 and  $M_0$  is simply-connected.

#### Remarks

(1) The extra hypothesis on  $M_0$  in Part (3) is unnecessary. This is seen by using the non-simply-connected weak *h*-cobordism theorem (see the proof below).

Engulfing

(2) There are counter-examples to extending the theorem to the case w-i=2,  $w \ge 4$ . The case w=3, i=1 is unsolved and equivalent to the Poincaré conjecture in dimension 3 (see bibliography).

We first prove an easy lemma:

**7.11 Lemma.** Suppose  $(W, M_0)$  has a handle decomposition with no handles of index  $\leq i$  then  $X^i$  can be engulfed from  $M_0$ .

*Proof.* We use induction on the number of handles. So let  $W = W_0 \cup H$ .



Fig. 58

Let D be the cocore of H. Then by general position we may assume that  $X \cap D = \emptyset$ . Then by the usual regular neighbourhood argument we can ambient isotope X off H. Then  $X \subset W_0$  and the result now follows by induction.

### Proof of 7.10

(1) This follows from 7.11 and Lemmas 6.13, 6.15, 6.16; to eliminate (w-3)-handles apply 6.5 (or 6.20) to the duals of an algebraically complementary (w-2, w-3)-pair.

(2) This follows by changing a homotopy into an ambient isotopy as in 5.9 (we are essentially in the manifold case since in a triangulation of X we can easily engulf the vertices first).

(3) We use the weak *h*-cobordism theorem. Choose a handle decomposition and eliminate 1-handles by the remark below 6.15. Next ambient isotope X off the 3-, 4- and 5-handles by 7.11. Now use 2-connectivity to find 3-handles  $H_i^{(3)}$  which are algebraically complementary to the 2-handles  $H_i^{(2)}$  (see proof of 6.19). Then  $C_0 \cup \bigcup \{H_i^{(2)}\} \cup \bigcup \{H_i^{(3)}\}$  is a 5-dimensional *h*-cobordism and hence a "weak" product by 7.7. It is now easy to engulf X.

*Exercise.* Generalise the engulfing theorem for cobordisms with boundary.

#### **Embedding Manifolds**

**7.12** Theorem. Let  $f: M^n \rightarrow Q^q$  be a map of unbounded manifolds with M compact. Then f is homotopic to an embedding provided

(1)  $q-n \ge 3$ 

(2) M is d-connected where d = 2n - q

(3) Q is (d+1)-connected.

**7.13 Corollary.** A closed k-connected n-manifold embeds in  $\mathbb{R}^{2n-k}$ , provided  $n-k \ge 3$ .

Proof of 7.12. We can suppose that f is in general position. We then generalise the method of 5.5 using engulfing. The idea is to find collapsible subsets  $C \subset M$ ,  $D \subset Q$  such that  $f^{-1}(D) = C$  and  $S(f) \subset C$ . We can then complete the proof as in 5.5, namely choose regular neighbourhoods  $N_0$ , N of C, D in M, Q so that  $f^{-1}(N) = N_0$  and  $f^{-1}(\dot{N}) = \dot{N}_0$  and then replace  $f | N_0$  by an embedding into N using the cone construction.

C and D are found by a repeated engulfing argument:

First engulf S(f) in a ball B in M and define  $C_1 = (\text{singular})$  cone on S(f) in B. Then  $S(f) \subset C_1$ ,  $\dim(C_1) \leq d+1$  and  $C_1 \searrow 0$ .

Next engulf  $f(C_1)$  in a ball B' in Q and let  $D_1$ =singular cone on  $f(C_1)$  in B' which we can suppose shifted into general position with respect to  $f(M)(\operatorname{rel} f(C_1))$ . Then  $D_1 \searrow 0$  and  $f^{-1}(D_1) = C_1 \cup E_1$  where  $\dim(E_1) \leq d-1$  by general position and codimension  $\geq 3$ .

Now engulf  $E_1$  from a regular neighbourhood B of  $C_1$  in M and define  $C_2 = C_1 \cup (\text{trail of } E_1 \text{ under a collapse } B \searrow C_1).$ 

Then  $S(f) \subset C_1 \subset C_2 \searrow 0$  and  $\dim(C_2 - C_1) \leq d$ .

Next engulf  $f(C_2)$  from a regular neighbourhood of  $D_1$  and define

 $D_2 = D_1 \cup (\text{trail of } f(C_2) \text{ under a collapse}).$ 

Then  $f(C_2) \subset D_2 \searrow 0$  and  $\dim(D_2 - f(C_2)) \leq d+1$  so that by general position we can assume  $f^{-1}(D_2) = C_2 \cup E_2$  where  $\dim E_2 \leq d-2$ .

The process continues with the dimension of the "error term"  $E_i$  decreasing at each stage. Eventually  $E_n = \emptyset$  and  $C = C_n$ ,  $D = D_n$  and the theorem is proved.

7.14 Exercise. Prove a version of 7.12 for bounded manifolds where the map is already an embedding on the boundaries by using a collar to replace the problem by an "interior" one. Deduce that the embedding constructed in 7.12 is unique up to concordance provided M is (d+1)connected and Q (d+2)-connected, where  $f_0, f_1$  are concordant if they are restrictions of an embedding  $F: M \times I \rightarrow Q \times I$  which respects the top and bottom levels only. (See also the historical notes.)

# **Appendix A. Algebraic Results**

Here we give definitions and results used in the book. Proofs can be found in [J.1], [J.2] or [J.3] (see bibliography), for a geometrical treatment see below and [J.4].

#### A.1 Homology

We will assume that abelian homology groups  $H_n(X, A)$  are defined for  $n=0, 1, \ldots$ , where  $A \subset X$  is a pair of topological spaces. These groups have the following properties:

(1) If  $f: (X, A) \to (Y, B)$  is a map of pairs then there is an induced natural homomorphism  $f_*: H_n(X, A) \to H_n(Y, B)$ . Naturality means

- (a) id<sub>\*</sub> = id:  $H_n(X, A) \to H_n(X, A)$ ,
- (b)  $(f \circ g)_* = f_* \circ g_*$ .
- (2) There is a natural boundary homomorphism

$$\partial \colon H_n(X, A) \to H_{n-1}(A) \equiv H_{n-1}(A, \emptyset).$$

Here naturality means that if  $f: (X, A) \rightarrow (Y, B)$  is a map then the square

$$H_n(X, A) \xrightarrow{\partial} H_{n-1}(A)$$

$$\downarrow^{f_*} \qquad \qquad \downarrow^{f|_*}$$

$$H_n(Y, B) \xrightarrow{\partial} H_{n-1}(B)$$

commutes.

(3) Exactness. The sequence

$$\to H_n(A) \to H_n(X) \to H_n(X, A) \xrightarrow{\partial} H_{n-1}(A) \to$$

is exact where the unamed homomorphisms are induced by inclusion. (4) Homotopy. Suppose  $f, g: (X, A) \to (Y, B)$  are two maps and that there is a map  $h: (X \times I, A \times I) \to (Y, B)$  such that  $h|X \times 0 = f$  and  $h|X \times 1 = g$ . Then  $f_* = g_*$ . Remark. h is said to be a homotopy between f and g. Homotopy is an equivalence relation on the set of maps  $(X, A) \rightarrow (Y, B)$ . A map f is a homotopy equivalence if there is a map  $g: (Y, B) \rightarrow X$ , A) so that  $f \circ g$ and  $g \circ f$  are both homotopic to the relevant identity maps. It follows from (1) and (4) that if f is a homotopy equivalence then  $f_*$  is an isomorphism. If the inclusion  $A \subset X$  is a homotopy equivalence then from exactness  $H_n(X, A)=0$  for all n. (Write  $H_*(X, A)=0$ .) A special sort of homotopy equivalence often used is a (strong) deformation retraction.  $A \subset X$  is a deformation retract if there is a homotopy of id |X| to a retraction  $r: X \rightarrow A$  and the homotopy is fixed on A (i.e.  $h(a, t)=a, a \in A$ ). (5) Excision. Suppose that  $U \subset A$  and  $cl(U) \subset int(A)$  then the homomorphism  $H_n(X - U, A - U) \rightarrow H_n(X, A)$  induced by inclusion is an isomorphism.

*Remark.* If  $P, Q_1 \subset Q$  are polyhedra with  $Q_1 \supset Q - P$  and we write  $P_1$  for  $P \cap Q_1$  then  $H_n(Q_1, P_1) \rightarrow H_n(Q, P)$  is an isomorphism. This follows from excision and homotopy by a simple argument.

(6) Dimension.

$$H_n(\text{pt.}) \cong \begin{cases} 0, & n \neq 0 \\ \mathbb{Z}, & n = 0. \end{cases}$$

*Remark.* If X deformation retracts on a point (say X is contractible) then  $H_n(X) \cong H_n(\text{pt.})$ ; or equivalently  $\tilde{H}_*(X) \equiv \text{Ker}(H_*(X) \to H_*(\text{pt.})) = 0$ .

### A.2 Geometric Interpretation of Homology

The interpretation given here can be taken as the definition of homology if the reader desires. The properties listed above are easily proved – the excision axiom uses regular neighbourhoods, the dimension axiom follows from the cone construction, for details see [J.4; 3.1].

An *n*-cycle is a polyhedron P which possesses a triangulation K so that each principal simplex of K has dimension n (a simplex is principal if it is the face of no other) and each (n-1)-simplex is the face of exactly two *n*-simplexes. Equivalently (and more intrinsically) there is a polyhedron of dimension n-2,  $S(P) \subset P$  such that

(1) 
$$P = \operatorname{cl}(P - S(P))$$

(2) P-S(P) is an *n*-manifold without boundary.

In other words P is a "manifold with a codimension 2 singularity" and we call S(P) the singularity of P. P is oriented if P-S(P) is oriented (use the geometrical definition given in Chapter 3 following the treatment which avoids algebraic topology).

An *n*-cycle with boundary is a pair  $(P, \partial P)$  such that there is an (n-2)-dimensional polyhedron  $S(P) \subset P$  so that

- (1)  $P = \operatorname{cl}(P S(P))$
- (2) P-S(P) is an *n*-manifold with boundary  $\partial P S(P)$
- (3)  $\partial P$  is an (n-1)-cycle with singularity  $S(P) \cap \partial P$ .

A singular n-cycle in X is a pair (P, f) where P is an oriented n-cycle and  $f: P \to X$  a map.  $(P_0, f_0)$  and  $(P_1, f_1)$  are homologous (or bordant) if there is an oriented n-cycle with boundary Q and a map  $g: Q \to X$  so that  $\partial Q \cong P_0 \cup P_1$  and, if we identify Q with  $P_0 \cup P_1$  by this isomorphism, then we have  $f_0 = g | P_0, f_1 = g | P_1$ . (Q, g) is called the homology between  $(P_0, f_0)$ and  $(P_1, f_1)$ .

Then  $H_n(X)$  is the set of homology classes of singular *n*-cycles in X. Group structure is given by disjoint union; to see existence of inverses consider  $f \circ \pi_1$ :  $P \times I \to X$ .

More generally a singular *n*-cycle in (X, A) is a pair (P, f) where *P* is an oriented *n*-cycle with boundary and *f* a map of pairs  $(P, \partial P) \rightarrow (X, A)$ . Homology is defined using bordisms with boundary (cf. Chapter 6) and we have the relative homology group  $H_n(X, A)$ .

#### A.3 Homology Groups of Spheres

#### Theorem

(1) 
$$H_i(S^n) = 0, i \neq 0, n$$
  
 $H_n(S^n) \cong \mathbb{Z} \cong H_0(S^n), n > 0$   
 $H_0(S^0) \cong \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}.$ 

(2) id:  $S^n \to S^n$  is a generator of  $H_n(S^n)$  (under the geometric interpretation).

(3) (3.31)  $r_n: S^n \to S^n$  is not homotopic to id.

Proof.

(1) By induction on *n*. For n=0 the result is easy. Suppose the theorem true for n-1 and consider  $S^n = I^{n+1} = D^n_+ \cup D^n_-$  where

$$D_{+}^{n} = \{x \mid x \in S^{n}, x_{n} \ge 0\}$$

and  $D_{-}^{n}$  has  $x_{n} \leq 0$ . Then  $D_{+}^{n} \cap D_{-}^{n} = S^{n-1}$  and since balls are contractible we have

$$\hat{H}_*(S^n) \cong H_*(S^n, D^n_-)$$
 by homotopy and exactness  
 $\cong H_*(D^n_+, S^{n-1})$  by excision.

Now use the long exact sequence and induction.

(2) By induction again using the last proof. Consider  $\alpha = [\text{id}: D_+^n \to D_+^n]$  then  $\partial \alpha = [\text{id}: S^{n-1} \to S^{n-1}]$  and so by induction  $\alpha$  is a generator of  $H_n(D_+^n, S^{n-1})$ . But  $\beta = [\text{id}: S^n \to S^n]$  corresponds under excision to  $\alpha$ .

(3) Observe that  $\pi_1: S^n \times I \to S^n$  is a homology between  $[id] \cup [r_n]$  and  $[\emptyset]$  which represents zero. So if  $id \simeq r_n$  then 2[id] = 0 contradicting Part (1).

### A.4 Cohomology

There is a dual theory which we mention briefly (for a geometrical treatment see [J.4]). Cohomology groups  $H^*(X, A)$  are defined so that the direction of the induced homomorphisms is reversed. I.e.  $f: (X, A) \rightarrow (Y, B)$  induces  $f^*: H^*(Y, B) \rightarrow H^*(X, A)$ . Cohomology satisfies axioms similar to those for homology. There are cap products

$$\bigcap: H_q(X, A) \otimes H^p(X, A) \to H_{q-p}(X, A)$$

and if M is an oriented manifold then  $\bigcap [id]: H^p(M) \to H_{n-p}(M)$  gives the Poincaré duality isomorphism of Chapter 6. The intersection number of two cycles (defined in Chapter 5) is the same as the cap product of one with the Poincaré dual of the other (cf. [J.4; II, 3]). There is an Alexander duality theorem which relates the homology of a polyhedron  $P \subset \mathbb{R}^n$  with the cohomology of  $\mathbb{R}^n - P$ . There is also a universal coefficient theorem which relates cohomology to homology. We used only a weak form of the theorem namely,

**Theorem.**  $H^*(X, A) = 0$  if and only if  $H_*(X, A) = 0$ .

This weak form is easily deduced from the recipe given in A.7 for computing homology and cohomology from incidence numbers in a CW complex.

### A.5 Coefficients

If G is an abelian group then there are defined homology and cohomology groups with coefficients G denoted  $H_*(X, A; G)$  and  $H^*(X, A; G)$ . The ordinary homology groups are the same as those with coefficients Z. Coefficients Z<sub>2</sub> have a simple geometric interpretation as bordism of unoriented cycles. (Co)homology groups with coefficients satisfy the same axioms as those for coefficients Z except for the dimension axiom which reads  $H_n(\text{pt.}; G) = H^n(\text{pt.}; G) = 0, n \neq 0, \cong G, n = 0.$ 

# A.6 Homotopy Groups

Let X be a space and  $* \in X$  a fixed point, the basepoint. Then the *n*-th homotopy group  $\pi_n(X)$  is the set of homotopy classes of maps  $(I^n, \dot{I}^n) \to (X, *)$ ; group structure is given for  $n \ge 1$  by track addition:
$$(f+g)(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = f(2x_1+1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \quad x_1 \le 0$$
  
= g(2x\_1-1, x\_2, \dots, x\_n) \quad x\_1 \ge 0.

 $\pi_1(X)$  is the fundamental group of X and  $\pi_n(X)$  is abelian for  $n \ge 2$ . If  $* \in A \subset X$  then the relative groups  $\pi_n(X, A)$  are defined to be homotopy classes of maps

$$(I^n, \dot{I}^n, J^{n-1}) \rightarrow (X, A, *)$$

where  $J^{n-1} = cl(\dot{I}^n - F^{n-1})$  and  $F^{n-1}$  is the face  $x_1 = 1$ . The boundary map  $\partial: \pi_n(X, A) \to \pi_{n-1}(A)$  is defined by restricting to  $F^{n-1}$  and identifying  $F^{n-1}$  with  $I^{n-1}$ . The homotopy groups satisfy the axioms for the homology groups (the induced homomorphism is defined by composition) with the exception of the excision axiom and the dimension axiom  $(\pi_n(\text{pt.})=0 \text{ all } n)$ .

The pair (X, A) is *r*-connected if every map  $f: (P, Q) \rightarrow (X, A)$  is homotopic to a map into A, where P is a polyhedron of dimension  $\leq r$ . If A is path connected then (X, A) is *r*-connected if and only if  $\pi_i(X, A) = 0$ for  $i \leq r$  (for the if part use a skeletal induction over some triangulation of (P, Q)). 1-connected is usually called *simply-connected*. X is *r*-connected if (X, \*) is *r*-connected. It is easy to see that X is simply-connected if and only if X is path connected and every loop in X (i.e. map of  $S^1$ in X) extends to a map of  $D^2$  in X.

An action of  $\pi_1$  on  $\pi_n$  is defined by adding a collar to  $I^n$  and mapping the collar lines around the given loop. A similar construction gives a change of basepoint isomorphism and if  $\pi_1 = 0$  then  $\pi_n$  is independent of basepoint and is isomorphic with  $[S^n, X]$  (notice that  $S^n \cong I^n/I^n$ ). Here [,] denotes the set of homotopy classes of maps.

## A.7 CW Complexes

If A is a space and  $f: S^{i-1} \to A$  a map then the identification space  $A \cup_j I^i$  is said to be obtained from A by attaching an *i*-cell. The natural map  $\phi: I^i \to A \cup_j I^i$  is the characteristic map for the *i*-cell and we write  $A \cup_j I^i = A \cup e^i$ .

A finite CW complex X attached to A is obtained by repeatedly attaching cells in order of increasing dimension with cells of the same dimension having disjoint interiors. Observe the similarity with nice handle decompositions. Infinite CW complexes are defined by attaching all the *i*-cells simultaneously.

Let  $e^i$ ,  $e^{i+1}$  be cells in X then the restriction of the characteristic map for  $e^{i+1}$  composed with the collapsing map  $c: A \cup e^i \to (A \cup e^i)/A \cong I^i/I^i$  determines a map

$$f: S^i \to I^i / \dot{I}^i \cong S^i.$$

The homological degree of f defined by  $\deg(f)[id] = [f]$  (cf. A.3) is called the incidence number of  $e^{i+1}$  on  $e^i$  denoted  $\varepsilon(e^{i+1}, e^i)$ .

Now let  $C_n(X, A)$  be the free abelian group with basis the *n*-cells of X and  $\partial_n: C_n(X, A) \to C_{n-1}(X, A)$  the homomorphism determined by

$$\hat{c}(e^n) = \sum \left\{ \varepsilon(e^n, e^{n-1}) e^{n-1} | e^{n-1} \in X \right\}.$$

## Theorem

(1)  $\hat{\partial}_{n-1} \circ \hat{\partial}_n = 0$ 

(2)  $H_n(X, A) \cong \operatorname{Ker}(\partial_n) / \operatorname{Im}(\partial_{n+1}).$ 

Sketch of proof. By excision and A.3 we can identify  $C_n$  with  $H_n(X_n, X_{n-1})$  where  $X_i = A \cup \{j \text{-cells} | j \leq i\}$ . Moreover  $H_i(X_n, X_{n-1}) = 0$  for  $i \neq n$ . Then  $\partial_n$  is the composition

$$H_n(X_n, X_{n-1}) \to H_{n-1}(X_{n-1}) \to H_{n-1}(X_{n-1}, X_{n-2})$$

and part (1) follows from diagram chasing using exactness. Now consider the long exact sequences of the triples  $X_{n+1} \supset X_n \supset X_{n-1}$  and  $X_{n+1} \supset X_{n-1} \supset X_{n-2}$  (exactness for a triple follows from exactness for a pair and diagram chasing). From the first sequence we deduce that  $H_n(X_{n+1}, X_{n-1}) \cong C_n/\operatorname{Im}(\hat{c}_{n+1})$  and from the second that

$$H_n(X_{n+1}, X_{n-2}) \cong \operatorname{Ker} \left( C_n / \operatorname{Im} (\partial_{n+1}) \to C_{n-1} \right) = \operatorname{Ker} (\partial_n) / \operatorname{Im} (\partial_{n+1}).$$

Finally an easy induction argument shows that  $H_n(X, A) = H_n(X_{n+1}, X_{n-2})$ .

Addenda. (a) If we define  $\delta_n: C_n \to C_{n+1}$  by  $\delta_n(e^n) = \sum \varepsilon(e^{n+1}, e^n) e^{n+1}$ . Then  $H^n(X, A) = \operatorname{Ker}(\delta_n)/\operatorname{Im}(\delta_{n-1})$ .

(b) Define  $C_n(X, A; G) = C_n(X, A) \otimes G$  then  $H_*(X, A; G)$  and  $H^*(X, A; G)$  are computed in a similar way.

Whitehead's theorem (quoted in Chapter 1 but not used in the book) states that a map  $f: X \to Y$  of 1-connected *CW* complexes is a homotopy equivalence if and only if  $f_*: H_*(X) \to H_*(Y)$  is an isomorphism.

## A.8 The Universal Cover

Let X be a path-connected topological space. The universal cover  $\hat{X}$  of X is defined as a set to be the set of homotopy classes of maps  $f: (I, 0) \rightarrow (X, *)$  where the homotopies are fixed on 1. There is a natural map  $p: \tilde{X} \rightarrow X$  by p[f] = f(1), and we give  $\tilde{X}$  the weakest topology which makes p continuous (i.e. U open if and only if p(U) open in X).  $\pi = \pi_1(X)$  acts on  $\tilde{X}$  over X by track addition i.e.  $f^{\pi} = g + [f]$  and it easy to see that  $p^{-1}(y_0) = y^{\pi}$  where  $y \in p^{-1}(y_0)$ .

Now suppose that (X, A) is a CW complex on A in which all the cells are based (i.e. each cell  $e^i$  has a path from  $1 = (1, 0, ..., 0) \in e^i$  to

\* $\in A$ ) and suppose that  $\pi_1(A) \cong \pi_1(X)$  by inclusion. Let  $e^i$  be a cell with base point  $y_0$  and base path  $\alpha$ . Consider the characteristic map for  $e^i, \phi: (I^i, 1) \to (X, y_0)$ , then, since  $I^i$  is simply-connected, each point  $x \in I^i$ determines a unique point  $\tilde{x} \in \tilde{X}$ , namely the class of  $\alpha + \beta$ , where  $\beta$  is a path in  $I^i$  from 1 to x. This defines a map  $\tilde{\phi}: I^i \to \tilde{X}$  which is the characteristic map of a cell  $\tilde{e}^i$ .  $(\tilde{e}^i)^e$  is obtained by operating pointwise (or equivalently by changing the base path by adding g).

Thus  $(\tilde{X}, \tilde{A})$  becomes a *CW* complex with cells  $(\tilde{e}^i)^{\varepsilon}$  for  $e^i \in X$  and  $g \in \pi$ . Now  $\pi$  acts cellwise on  $\tilde{X}$  and hence acts on  $C_n(\tilde{X}, \tilde{A})$  which thus becomes a  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$ -module, where  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$  is the integral group ring of  $\pi$ . This action carries over to  $H_n(\tilde{X}, \tilde{A})$  which is thus also a  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$ -module.

Now let  $e^{i+1}$ ,  $e^i \in X$  be cells. Define their  $\mathbb{Z} \pi$ -incidence number to be  $\sum \{\varepsilon((\tilde{e}^{i+1})^{\varepsilon}, \tilde{e}^i) g | g \in \pi\}$ . Then  $C_*(\tilde{X}, \tilde{A}) \cong C_*(X, A) \otimes \mathbb{Z} \pi$  with boundary on the right given by the  $\mathbb{Z} \pi$ -incidence numbers. Hence  $H_*(\tilde{X}, \tilde{A})$  can be computed from cells of X and  $\mathbb{Z} \pi$ -incidence numbers.

Here we give definitions and results with sketches of proofs. Details are to be found in Cohen [K.3] and Milnor [K.2] (see bibliography).

## **B.1** Geometrical Definition of Torsion

Let A be a space and A' obtained from A by attaching two cells  $e^i$  and  $e^{i+1}$ , and suppose that there are characteristic maps  $h^i$  and  $h^{i+1}$  for  $e^i$  and  $e^{i+1}$  such that  $h^i = h^{i+1} \circ e$  where  $e: I^i \to I^{i+1}$  is the inclusion of the face  $F^i$ . Thus A' may be regarded as obtained from A by attaching the disc  $I^{i+1}$  by the map  $h^{i+1}|: J^i \to A$  (where  $J^i = \operatorname{cl}(I^{i+1} - F^i)$ ). Then A' is said to be a cellular expansion of A and we say that A' collapses cellularly on A. Notice that there is strong deformation retraction of A' on A given by retracting  $I^{i+1}$  on  $J^i$ .

Now consider pairs (X, A) where X is a finite CW complex on A and  $A \subset X$  is a homotopy equivalence, and write  $X' \searrow X$  or  $X \nearrow X'$  rel A if X' is obtained from X by a sequence of cellular expansions. Write  $X' \frown X$  rel A if there is a sequence of complexes on A such that  $X' = X_0 \searrow X_1 \nearrow X_2 \searrow \cdots \searrow X_n = X$  rel A.  $\bigtriangleup$  is then an equivalence relation on the set of complexes X attached to A such that  $A \subset X$  is a homotopy equivalence, and we define the Whitehead group of A, Wh(A), to be the set of equivalence classes. The torsion  $\tau(X, A)$  of a pair (X, A)is the element of Wh(A) which it determines.

*Remark.* Wh(A) is a abelian semi-group with unit the equivalence class of the pair (A, A) and addition given by union identified over A. The fact that it is a group follows from the equivalent algebraic definition (see B.3).

## **B.2** Geometrical Properties of Torsion

Suppose that  $X_1$  is a subcomplex of X and that  $X_1 \searrow X'_1$ . Then there is a complex X' obtained by attaching the cells of  $X - X_1$  to  $X'_1$  by composing their attaching maps with the natural retraction of  $X_1$  on  $X'_1$ .

X' is said to be obtained from X by an *internal collapse* written  $X \leq X'$ . An internal expansion is the reverse of an internal collapse.

**Lemma 1.** The torsion of a pair (X, A) is unaffected by internal expansions and collapses.

Sketch of proof. Consider  $W = X \times I$  with  $A \times I$  identified to A and  $X_1 \times 0$  collapsed to  $X'_1 \times 0$ . Then  $W \searrow X' \times 0$  by cylindrical collapsing (cf. remarks above 3.25) and  $W \searrow X \times 1$  by collapsing cells in  $(X - X_1) \times I$  cylindrically, collapsing from the side for  $X_1 \times I - X'_1 \times I$  and finishing with a cylindrical collapse. Therefore  $X'_1 \times 0 \nearrow W \searrow X_1 \times 1$ .

**Lemma 2.** The torsion of a pair (X, A) is unaffected by a homotopy of the attaching maps of cells in X - A.

Sketch of proof. Let X' differ from X by a homotopy of attaching maps. Define W by attaching (cells in  $X - A \times I$  by the homotopy. Then we have cylindrical collapses  $X \times 0 \nearrow W \searrow X' \times 1$ .

Lemma 3. Wh(A) = 0 if A is 1-connected.

Sketch of proof. The idea is to follow the proof of the h-cobordism theorem given in Chapter 6. The analogues of the handle moves are: Introduction of complementary handles—internal expansion. Cancellation of complementary handles—internal collapse. Adding handles—adding cells by homotoping the attaching map of one cell "over" the other.

Then one proceeds to simplify  $C_*(X, A)$  exactly as in 6.17 until there are no cells left.

Now suppose that  $X_1 \subset X$  is a subcomplex and that  $cl(X - X_1)$  is homeomorphic to a ball  $B^n$  attached to  $X_1$  by a face  $B^{n-1}$ . Then we say X poly-collapses on  $X_1$ .

**Lemma 4.** The torsion of a pair (X, A) is unaffected by poly-expansions and collapses.

*Proof.*  $X - X_1$  determines a *CW* complex *L* on  $B^{n-1}$ . Since  $B^{n-1}$  is 1-connected  $L \swarrow B^{n-1}$  rel  $B^{n-1}$  by Lemma 3 and this induces  $X \bigtriangleup X_1$ , as required.

A CW complex X' on A is a subdivision of X if |X'| = |X| and each cell of X' is contained in a cell of X. We write  $X' \triangleleft X$ .

**Lemma 5.** If  $X' \triangleleft X$  then  $\tau(X', A) = \tau(X, A)$ .

*Proof.* Consider  $W = X \times I$  with  $A \times I$  identified to A and  $X \times 0$  subdivided to  $X' \times 0$ . Then W poly-collapses on both  $X' \times 0$  and  $X \times 1$  and the result follows from Lemma 4.

# **B.3** Algebraic Definition of Torsion

Let  $\pi$  be a group and  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$  the integral group ring of  $\pi$ . Consider the set of invertible  $p \times p$  matrices with entries in  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$ , for p=0, 1, ... An equivalence relation on this set is generated by the following operations:

(1) Replace A by 
$$\begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$
 or vice versa.

(2) Add a multiple of one row to another.

(3) Reorder rows or columns.

(4) Multiply a row by an element of  $\pi$  or by -1.

The set of equivalence classes is the Whitehead group of  $\pi$  denoted  $Wh(\pi)$ .

Remark. The multiplication in Wh( $\pi$ ) is given by block addition i.e.  $A + B = \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix}$ . To see that Wh( $\pi$ ) is a group observe that this multiplication coincides with matrix multiplication since  $B \sim \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix}$ using operations (1) and (3).

Now let A be a space and  $\pi = \pi_1(A)$ . Let a  $p \times p$  matrix A over  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$ and an integer i > 1 be given. Construct a CW complex X attached to A by first attaching p *i*-cells to the basepoint to form  $X^i$  and then further attaching p (i+1)-cells so that  $\varepsilon(e_i^{i+1}, e_k^i) = A_{jk}$  for each (j, k). (This is done by attaching the cells in  $\tilde{X}^i$  using the fact that  $\pi_i(\tilde{X}^i, \tilde{A})$ is a free  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$ -module on p generators.) Now notice that if A is varied by one of the operations (1) to (4) then  $\tau(X, A)$  is unaltered since (1) corresponds to an expansion or collapse, (2) to adding cells, (3) to renumbering cells and (4) to changing a basepath or characteristic map.

Thus we have a function  $\phi$ : Wh( $\pi$ )  $\rightarrow$  Wh(A).

**Theorem.**  $\phi$  is an isomorphism.

Sketch of proof. That  $\phi$  is a homomorphism is clear using block addition. To see that  $\phi$  is onto use a proof like the proof of the s-cobordism theorem to move cells into two adjacent dimensions. To see that  $\phi$  is 1:1 construct a function  $\psi$ : Wh $(A) \rightarrow$  Wh $(\pi)$  so that  $\psi \circ \phi = id$ . This is done by associating a matrix to each "boundary map"  $C_i/B_i \cong B_{i-1}$  using stable bases for the  $B_i$ . One then sums the torsion of these matrices using alternating signs. For details here see Milnor [K.2; § 3].

# B.4 Torsion and Polyhedra

Let  $P \subset Q$  be a compact polyhedral pair with P a deformation retract of Q. Then by considering any triangulation of (Q, P) we get a definition of  $\tau(Q, P)$ . Now any two triangulations have a common subdivision and it follows from Lemma 5 that  $\tau(Q, P)$  is well-defined and a p.l. invariant of (Q, P). We have the following p.l. interpretation of torsion:

**Theorem.**  $\tau(Q, P) = 0$  if and only if there is a sequence of p.l. expansions and collapses (in the sense of Chapter 3)  $Q \land P$  rel P.

Sketch of proof. If  $Q \frown P$  by p.l. expansions and collapses then  $\tau(Q, P) = 0$  by Lemma 4. Now suppose that  $\tau(Q, P) = 0$  then an argument similar to the proof of the s-cobordism theorem shows that  $Q \frown P$  p.l., handle moves being replaced by p.l. approximations of the corresponding cell moves.

Now suppose that  $(W, M_0, M_1)$  is an *h*-cobordism and that we have a handle decomposition of W on  $M_0$ . We used the following result in the proof of the *s*-cobordism theorem:

**Theorem.**  $\tau(W, M_0) = \tau(K, M_0)$  where K is the CW complex associated to the given handle decomposition.

Sketch of proof. This follows from invariance under subdivision and internal collapse on noticing that K is essentially the result of collapsing each handle onto its core. More precisely let J be a triangulation of  $(W, M_0)$  so that the handles and their cores are all subcomplexes. Then internal poly-collapses replace each handle by its core and we obtain a subdivision of K.

## **B.5** Torsion and Homotopy Equivalences

Let  $h: X \to Y$  be a homotopy equivalence of *CW* complexes, such that  $h(X_i) \subset Y_i$  for each *i*. Form the *mapping cylinder*  $M_h$  by attaching  $X \times I$  to *Y* by  $h|X \times 1$ .  $M_h$  is then a *CW* complex and we define the torsion of  $h, \tau(h)$  to be  $\tau(M_h, X \times 0)$ . If  $h: P \to Q$  is a p.l. homotopy equivalence of compact polyhedra then  $M_h$  can be given the structure of an abstract polyhedron (see [B.1]) and thus  $\tau(h)$  is again defined. We then have the following interpretation of  $\tau(h)$  (compare Chapter 3).

**Theorem.**  $\tau(h)=0$  if and only if h is homotopic to a simple homotopy equivalence. The result is also true for CW complexes where "simple" is interpreted using cellular collapses.

Sketch of proof. If  $\tau(h)=0$  then  $M_h 
ightarrow P \times 0$  and  $P \times 0 
ightarrow M_h \searrow Q$  determines a map homotopic to h. Now if  $h \simeq h'$  then  $M_h 
ightarrow M_{h'}$  by considering the mapping cylinder of the homotopy. Consequently if  $h \simeq \text{simple}$  homotopy equivalence then following  $Q \ P$  gives  $M_h \ M_{id} \searrow P \times 0$ . A similar argument establishes the CW case.

# **Historical Notes**

(Reference numbers refer to the bibliography)

# General notes

Polyhedra and p.l. maps have usually been defined using simplicial complexes and simplicial maps. These definitions appear as Theorems 2.11 and 2.14 in our approach. More suitable names for our definitions would be locally-conical sets and maps. The subject arose as a branch of geometric topology in the 1920's, Newman and Alexander being the principal early authors. Geometric topology itself arose out of Poincaré's work on differential equations in the 1890's. The subject was developed by Whitehead in his work on simplicial neighbourhoods in the 1940's. Zeeman's notes [A.7] have been the most important modern influence on the subject.

P.l. topology is now of central importance in geometric topology since Kirby and Siebenmann [R.4] have shown that (in dimensions  $\geq 5$ ) p.l. notions essentially coincide with topological ones, except for a curious 3-dimensional obstruction. Also smoothing theory (Section Q of bibliography) which links p.l. topology to differential topology, is a well developed subject in which the main problems are now essentially homotopy-theoretic.

# Notes on Chapter 1

p. 2: "The house with two rooms" was constructed by Bing [H.3] as an example of a contractible polyhedron which is not collapsible (see also Chapter 3).

p. 6: The "standard mistake" is so called because it has been made in print so often.

p. 7: Our remarks on the definition of a polyhedron apply also to our definition of a p.l. manifold. Notice that a complex which triangulates a p.l. manifold is usually referred to as a combinatorial manifold (see 2.21).

p.8: The Poincaré conjecture is named in honour of Poincaré, who investigated the 3-dimensional case. He falsely conjectured that a homology 3-sphere is a genuine sphere and discovered counterexamples.

The *h*-cobordism theorem was proved by Smale [H.4] in the differentiable case, who introduced the idea of a handle and gave essentially the same proof as our Chapter 6. However, for technical reasons, handles work best in the p.l. case and authors in differentiable topology prefer the equivalent notion of a Morse function. This is the attitude taken by Milnor [H.6]. The extension to the p.l. case was realised by several authors, particularly Stallings and Zeeman.

Smale used his *h*-cobordism theorem to prove the Poincaré conjecture in dimensions  $\geq 5$ . In the p.l. case dimension 5 presents a little more difficulty since Smale used the vanishing of  $\pi_4(\mathbb{O})$  to show that a 5-dimensional homotopy sphere bounds a contractible 6-manifold (and hence by the argument given in Chapter 1, is *h*-cobordant to a 5-sphere). In the p.l. case we need to know that  $\pi_4(PL)=0$  which uses in addition Cerf's theorem [Q.8].

A weak form of the Poincaré conjecture for dimension  $\geq 5$  (a homotopy sphere is a topological sphere) was proved by Stallings [H.10] and Zeeman [H.11] independently of Smale's work, using engulfing theory (see our Chapter 7, where an engulfing theorem is deduced from handle theory).

The s-cobordism theorem was proved independently by Barden [H.7], Mazur [H.8], and Stallings [A.8]. See also Kervaire [H.9].

## Notes on Chapter 2

p. 15: The foundations of p.l. topology (particularly Alexander's work) originally rested heavily on "stellar moves"—the science of stellar subdivision.

p. 18 and p. 20: The subdivision theorem and the treatment of pseudo-radial projection are taken from Zeeman's notes [A.7].

p. 24: The collaring theorem was first proved by Whitehead [B.1] and extended by Zeeman [B.2]. Our treatment is based on Conelly [B.3].

# Notes on Chapter 3

Our treatment of regular neighbourhoods is based on Cohen's ideas [C.4]; the earliest result in the chapter is Newman's theorem which appears as our 3.13. Our proof differs little from Cohen's proof [A.6] and is considerably shorter than previous proofs [A.2], Alexander [A.4] (based on stellar moves), Zeeman [A.7] (using a long induction together with the collapsing approach to regular neighbourhoods). Whitehead's paper [B.1] initiated the theory of regular neighbourhoods which was then intimately linked with "simplicial collapsing" which does not appear at all in our treatment. Hudson and Zeeman [C.1] and Cohen [C.4] have extended the theory to "relative regular neighbourhoods".

p. 39: Collapsing and simple homotopy type were invented by Whitehead [B.1] and [K.1], see also Appendix B.

p. 40: The notion of trail is due to Hirsch.

p. 43: 3.32 is due to Gugenheim [G.1].

p. 47: The 3-dimensional case of the Schönflies theorem is due to Alexander [D.1]. The topological theorem was proved by Brown [D.2], Mazur [D.3] and Morse [D.4]. Our 3.38 also follows from the methods of [D.2]. Cohen and Sullivan [D.5] have shown, independently of the unsolved Schönflies conjecture, that any  $M^n \subset Q^{n+1}$  (i.e. not necessarily locally flat) has a regular neighbourhood  $\cong M \times I$ .

## Notes on Chapter 4

p. 52: The unknotting theorem for balls and spheres in codimension  $\geq 3$  is due to Zeeman [B.2].

p. 54: The idea of cellular moves is also due to Zeeman [G.5]. (He invented it for precisely the same purpose as our 4.16.)

p. 56: 4.18 and 4.20 (the strong versions mentioned in the remark on p. 56) are due to Hirsch [L.5].

p. 57: The isotopy extension theorem for manifolds (4.25) is due to Hudson and Zeeman [E.1]. Extensions to polyhedra were given by Rourke [E.3] (a weak theorem), Hudson and Lickorish-Siebenmann [E.4] (codimension  $\geq 3$ ), and the general theorem by Akin [E.5].

p. 58: Akin's hypotheses are constant ambient intrinsic dimension and a weaker local collaring condition.

## Notes on Chapter 5

General position is part of p.l. "folklore"; the first systematic treatment appears in Zeeman [A.7], more general theorems are given in Stallings [A.8].

p. 63: Theorem 5.5 is due to Penrose-Whitehead-Zeeman [G.4].

p. 64: Theorem 5.6 and the proof are taken from Zeeman [G.5].

p. 67: Piping is also part of the folklore.

p. 68: The Whitney lemma is due to Whitney! [G.8] in the smooth case. A proof of the p.l. case is given by Weber [G.9] using Zeeman's classification of links [G.7]. (Notice that the exercises at the end of Chapter 5 provide a proof without using links.)

## Notes on Chapter 6

The main reference for this chapter is Smale [H.4] (see the notes on Chapter 1).

p. 84: The duality theorem is due to Lefschetz. See also Appendix A.

p. 90: Construction of h-cobordisms is due to Stallings [A.8].

## Notes on Chapter 7

p. 91: Unknotting balls and spheres is due to Zeeman [B.2] (by a direct geometrical argument independent of the *h*-cobordism theorem).

p. 92: The criterion for unknotting in codimension 2 is due to Levine [G.2] for  $q \ge 5$  and Papakiriakopoulos [G.3] for q = 3. See [K.5] for a proof that Wh( $\mathbb{Z}$ )=0.

p. 93: The weak 5-dimensional theorems also follow from engulfing theory (which was invented by Stallings [I.2] and Zeeman [A.7] independently of handle theory).

p. 96: The embedding theorem is taken from Irwin [G.6].

p. 96: There is an unknotting theorem due to Zeeman [G.5] which shows that any two embeddings are ambient isotopic under the conditions of 7.14. However Hudson [O.9] has shown that concordance implies isotopy in codimension  $\geq 3$  (see Rourke [O.10] for a proof using "embedded handle theory"), so that Zeeman's theorem follows from Irwin's theorem and 7.14. However Hudson [O.6], and Casson-Sullivan [N.7; R.9; O.14] have improved both theorems to replace conditions on *M* and *Q* by a single condition on the map.

# **Bibliography**

References are arranged according to topic. Sections A to K cover topics in the book and Sections L to S cover further topics. When a paper is relevant to more than one topic it is listed under the first topic and mentioned in the others.

#### A. Foundations

- A.1 Alexander, J. W.: On the deformation of an n-cell. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. (U.S.A.)
   9, 406-407 (1923).
- A.2 Newman, M.H.A.: On the foundations of combinatorial analysis situs. Akad. Wer. (Amsterdam) (A) 29, 610-641 (1926).
- A.3 Newman, M.H.A.: On the superposition of n-dimensional manifolds. J. London Math. Soc. 2, 56-64 (1926).
- A.4 Alexander, J. W.: The combinatorial theory of complexes. Ann. of Math. 30, 292–320 (1930).
- A.5 Whitehead, J.H.C.: On subdivisions of complexes. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc. 31, 69-75 (1935).
- A.6 Cohen, M.M.: A proof of Newman's theorem. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc. 64, 961-963 (1968).

Systematic treatments of foundations:

- A.7 Zeeman, E.C.: Seminar on combinatorial topology, (notes) I.H.E.S. (Paris) and Univ. of Warwick (Coventry) 1963-6.
- A.8 Stallings, J.: Notes on polyhedral topology. Tata Institute (1968).
- A.9 Hudson, J.F.P.: Chicago lecture notes on p.I. topology. Published by Benjamin N.Y. 1969.

#### B. Collars and joins

Theorem 40 of:

B.1 Whitehead, J.H.C.: Simplicial spaces nuclei and m-groups. Proc. London Math. Soc. 45, 243-327 (1939).

Theorem 3 of:

- B.2 Zeeman, E.C.: Unknotting combinatorial balls. Ann. of Math. 78, 501-526 (1963).
- B.3 Conelly, R.: A new proof of Brown's collaring theorem. Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 27, 180-182 (1971).
- B.4 Morton, H.: Joins of polyhedra. Topology 9, 243-249 (1970).

### C. Regular neighbourhoods

Whitehead [B.1].

Extensions (infinite and regular neighbourhoods):

C.1 Hudson, J.F.P., Zeeman, E.C.: On regular neighbourhoods. Proc. London Math. Soc. (3) 43, 719-745 (1964).

Beware, the last paper contains a mistake, see:

- C.2 Tindell, R.: A counterexample on relative regular neighbourhoods. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 72, 894-897 (1966).
- C.3 Scott, A.: Infinite regular neighbourhoods. J. London Math. Soc. 42, 245-253 (1963). For complete treatment, see:
- C.4 Cohen, M.M.: A general theory of relative regular neighbourhoods. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 136, 189-230 (1969).
- D. Schönflies problem

3-dimensional case:

D.1 Alexander, J. W.: On the subdivision of 3-space by a polyhedron. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. (U.S.A.) 10, 6-8 (1924).

Topological case:

- D.2 Brown, M.: A proof of the generalised Schönflies theorem. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 66, 74-76 (1960).
- D.3 Mazur, B.: On embeddings of spheres. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 65, 59-65 (1959).
- D.4 Morse, M.: A reduction of the Schönflies extension problem. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 66, 113-115 (1960).
   The following paper includes an important method of resolving singularities. It is applied to bypassing the Schönflies problem.
- D.5 Cohen, M.M., Sullivan, D.P.: On the regular neighbourhood of a 2-sided submanifold. Topology 9, 141-148 (1970).

E. Isotopy

- E.1 Hudson, J.F.P., Zeeman, E.C.: On combinatorial isotopy. Publ. I.H.E.S. (Paris) 19, 69-94 (1964).
- E.2 Hudson, J.F. P.: Extending p.l. isotopies. Proc. London Math. Soc. (3) 16, 651-668 (1966).
- E.3 Rourke, C. P.: Covering the track of an isotopy. Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 18, 320–324 (1967).
- E.4 Lickorish, W.B.R., Siebenmann, L.: Regular neighbourhoods and the stable range. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 139, 207-230 (1969).
- E.5 Akin, E.: Manifold phenomena in the theory of polyhedra. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 143, 413-473 (1969).

F. General position

Zeeman, [A.7], Chapter 6. Stallings, [A.8], Chapter 5. Hudson, [A.9], Chapter 6.

F.1 Maunder, C.R.F.: General position theorems for homology manifolds, and: Improving the general position theorems for homology manifolds. J. London Math. Soc. (to appear).

G. Unknotting and embedding theorems (see also § O below)

Codimension 0:

Alexander [A.1].

G.1 Gugenheim, V. K.A. M.: P.I. isotopies and embeddings of elements and spheres, I. Proc. London Math. Soc. (3) 3, 29-53 (1953).

Codimension 1: see §D.

Codimension 2:

G.2 Levine, J.: Unknotting spheres in codimension 2. Topology 4, 9-16 (1965).

- G.3 Papakiriakopoulos, C. D.: Dehn's lemma and the asphericity of knots. Ann. of Math. 66, 1-26 (1957).
   Codimension ≥ 3:
- G.4 Penrose, R., Whitehead, J. H. C., Zeeman, E. C.: Imbedding of manifolds in euclidean space. Ann. of Math. 73, 613-623 (1961).
- G.5 Zeeman, E.C.: Unknotting spheres. Ann. of Math. 72, 350-361 (1960). Zeeman [B.2].
- G.6 Irwin, M.C.: Embeddings of polyhedral manifolds. Ann. of Math. 82, 1-14 (1965).
- G.7 Zeeman, E.C.: Isotopies of manifolds. Topology of 3-manifolds and related topics, M.K. Fort (Ed.). Prentice Hall 1962.
   Withing tanging (differential energy).

Whitney lemma (differential case):

- G.8 Whitney, H.. The self-intersection of a smooth n-manifold in 2n-space. Ann. of Math. (2) 45, 220-246 (1944).
  (p.l. case):
- G.9 Weber, C.: L'élimination des points doubles dans le cas combinatoire. Comm. Math. Helv. 41, 179-182 (1966).

Failure for p = q = 2:

G.10 Kervaire, M.A., Milnor, J.W.: On 2-spheres in 4-manifolds. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 47, 1651-1657 (1961).

H. Handle theory and the Poincaré conjecture

Dimension 3:

- H.1 Bing, R.H.: Necessary and sufficient conditions that a 3-manifold be S<sup>3</sup>. Ann. of Math. 68, 17-37 (1958).
- H.2 Papakiriakopoulos, C.D.: A reduction of the Poincaré conjecture to group theoretic conjectures. Ann. of Math. 77, 250-303 (1963).
- H.3 Bing, R. H.: Some aspects of the topology of 3-manifolds related to the Poincaré conjecture. Lectures in modern mathematics, vol. II, p. 93-128. Wiley. Dimension ≥ 5 (differential case):
- H.4 Smale, S.: Structure of manifolds. Amer. J. Math. 84, 387-399 (1962).
- H.5 Smale, S.: Generalised Poincaré's conjecture in dimensions >4. Ann. of Math. (2) 74, 391-466 (1961).
- H.6 Milnor, J.W.: Lectures on the h-cobordism theorem. Princeton U.P. 1965.
- H.7 Barden, D.: The structure of manifolds. Doctoral thesis, Cambridge (1963).
- H.8 Mazur, B.: Differential topology from the viewpoint of simple homotopy theory. Publ. I.H.E.S., (Paris) 15, 5-93 (1963).
- H.9 Kervaire, M.A.: Le théorème de Barden-Mazur-Stallings. Comm. Math. Helv. 40, 31-42 (1965).

(p.l. case):

- H.10 Stallings, J.: Polyhedral homotopy spheres. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 66, 485-488 (1960).
- H.11 Zeeman, E.C.: The Poincaré conjecture for n≥5. Topology of 3-manifolds and related topics, M.K. Fort (Ed.). Prentice Hall 1962.
  Stallings [A.8].
  Hudson [A.9].

### I. Engulfing

Hirsch, M.W., Zeeman, E.C.: Engulfing. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 72, 113-115 (1966).
 Zeeman [A.7], Chapter 7.
 Stallings [H.10].

- I.2 Stallings, J.: The p.l. structure of euclidean space. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc. 58, 481-488 (1962).
- I.3 Connell, E. H.: Approximating stable homeomorphisms by p.l. ones. Ann. of Math. **78**, 326–338 (1963).

## J. Homology

- J.1 Eilenberg, S., Steenrod, N.: The foundations of algebraic topology. Princeton U.P. 1952.
- J.2 Spanier, E.: Algebraic topology. McGraw Hill 1966.
- J.3 Hilton, P.T., Wylie, S.: Homology theory. Cambridge U.P. 1960.
- J.4 Rourke, C. P., Sanderson, B.J.: A geometric approach to homology theory, (notes) Warwick Univ. (Coventry) 1971.
- K. Torsion and simple homotopy type

Whitehead [B.1].

- K.1 Whitehead, J.H.C.: Simple homotopy types. Amer. J. Math. 72, 1-57 (1950).
- K.2 Milnor, J.W.: Whitehead torsion. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 72, 358-426 (1966).
- K.3 Cohen, M. M.: Simple homotopy theory, (to be published).
- K.4 Zeeman, E.C.: On the dunce hat. Topology 2, 341-358 (1964). For a proof that  $Wh(\mathbb{Z})=0$ , see:
- K.5 Higman, G.: The units of group rings. Proc. London Math. Soc. 46, 231-248 (1940).

### L. Normal bundles

- L.I Rourke, C.P., Sanderson, B.J.: Block bundles J. Ann. of Math. 87, 1-28 (1968). Alternative treatments:
- L.2 Kato, M.: Combinatorial prebundles 1 and II. Osaka J. Math. 4, 289-303 and 305-311 (1967).
- L.3 Morlet, C.: Les méthodes de la topologie différentielle dans l'étude des variétés semilinéaires. Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. 1, 313-394 (1968).
- L.4 Haefliger, A.: Lissages des immersions II (mimeographed notes). Univ. of Geneva (1967).

Connection with disc and microbundles:

- L.5 Hirsch, M.W.: On tubular neighbourhoods of manifolds. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc. 62, 177~185 (1966).
- L.6 Rourke, C. P., Sanderson, B.J.: An embedding without a normal microbundle. Invent. Math. 3, 293-299 (1967).
- L.7 Haefliger, A., Wall, C.T.C.: P.i. bundles in the stable range. Topology 4, 209-214 (1965).
- L.8 Kuiper, N., Lashof, R.: Microbundles and bundles, I and II. Invent. Math. 1, 1-17 and 243-259 (1966).

Extension to polyhedra:

- L.9 Stone, D.: A counterexample in block bundle theory. Topology 9, 11-12 (1970).
- L.10 Stone, D.: Stratified polyhedra. Springer Verlag lecture notes no. 252.

## M. Transversality

The shortest proof of the transversality theorem is given in Rourke and Sanderson [J.4], Theorem 4.1 of Part II, using a result from

M.1 Cohen, M.M.: Simplicial structures and transverse cellularity. Ann. of Math. 85, 218-245 (1967).

Alternative treatments:

- M.2 Rourke, C.P., Sanderson, B.J.: Block bundles II, transversality. Ann. of Math. 87, 255-277 (1968).
- M.3 Armstrong, M.A., Zeeman, E.C.: Transversality for p.l. manifolds. Topology 6, 433-466 (1967).

Extension to polyhedra:

 M.4 Armstrong, M. A.: Transversality for polyhedra. Ann. of Math. 86, 172-191 (1967). Stone [L.10].

Rourke and Sanderson [J.4] end of Section 4 of Part II.

### N. Surgery

Differential case:

- N.1 Milnor, J. W.: A procedure for killing homotopy groups of differential manifolds. A.M.S. Symposium in Pure Maths. 3, 39-55 (1961).
- N.2 Wallace, A. H.: Modifications and cobounding manifolds I and II. Canad. J. Math. 12, 503-528 (1960), and J. Math. Mech. 10, 773-809 (1961).
- N.3 Kervaire, M.A., Milnor, J.W.: Groups of homotopy spheres, 1. Ann. of Math. 77, 504-537 (1963).
- N.4 Browder, W.: Homotopy type of differentiable manifolds. Coll. on algebraic topology, Aarhus, 1962, 42–46.
- N.5 Novikov, S. P.: Diffeomorphisms of simply-connected manifolds. Soviet Math. Dokl. 3, 540-543 (1962).
- N.6 Wall, C.T.C.: An extension of results of Novikov and Browder. Amer. J. Math. 88, 20-32 (1966).

Differential and p.l. cases:

- N.7 Wall, C.T.C.: Surgery of compact manifolds. Academic Press 1970. Extensions and applications (see also Sections O and R):
- N.8 Siebenmann, L.: Finding a boundary for an open manifold. Doctoral thesis, Princeton Univ. (1965).
- N.9 Sullivan, D. P.: Triangulating homotopy equivalences. Doctoral thesis, Princeton Univ. (1966).
- N.10 Rourke, C.P., Sullivan, D.P.: On the Kervaire obstruction. Ann. of Math. 94, 397-413 (1971).
- N.11 Casson, A.: Fellowship dissertation on block bundles with manifolds as fibres and the hauptvermutung. Trinity College library, Cambridge (1967).
- N.12 Quinn, F.S.: A geometric formulation of surgery. Topology of manifolds, Edit. by Cantrell and Edwards. Chicago: Markham 1970.

### O. Further embedding and unknotting theorems

- O.1 Shapiro, A.: The obstruction to embedding a complex in euclidean space. Ann. of Math. 66, 256-269 (1957).
- O.2 Hudson, J.F.P.: Knotted tori and: A non-embedding theorem. Topology 2, 11-22 and 123-128 (1963).
- O.3 Lickorish, W.B.R.: The p.l. unknotting of cones. Topology 4, 67-91 (1965).
- O.4 Weber, C.: Plongements de polyèdres dans le domaine metastable. Comm. Math. Helv. 42, 1-77 (1967).
- O.5 Rourke, C. P.: Improper embeddings of p.l. spheres and balls. Topology 6, 297-330 (1967).
- O.6 Hudson, J.F. P.: P.I. embeddings. Ann. of Math. 85, 1-31 (1967).
- O.7 Hudson, J.F.P., Sumners, D.W.: Knotted ball pairs in unknotted sphere pairs. J. London Math. Soc. 41, 717-722 (1966).

O.8 Hacon, D.D.J.: Knotted spheres in tori. Quart. J. Math. (Oxford) 20, 431-446 (1969).

Concordance and isotopy:

Codimension  $\geq 3$ :

O.9 Hudson, J.F.P.: Concordance, isotopy and diffeotopy. Ann. of Math. 91, 425-448 (1970).

Codimension  $\geq 2$ :

- O.10 Rourke, C. P.: Embedded handle theory, concordance and isotopy. Topology of manifolds, Edit. by Cantrell and Edwards, p. 431-438. Chicago: Markham 1970. Codimension 0:
- O.11 Cerf, J.: Isotopie et pseudoisotopie. Proc. 1.C.M. (Moscow) 1966.
- O.12 Kato, M.: A concordance classification of homeomorphisms of  $S^p \times S^q$ . Topology **8**, 371–384 (1969).

Embedding theorems from surgery:

- O.13 Browder, W.: On the embedding problem. Proc. I.C.M. (Moscow) 1966.
- O.14 Haefliger, A.: Knotted spheres and related geometric topics. Proc. I.C.M. (Moscow) 1966.

Wall [N.7], Section 10.

Differential case:

- O.15 Haefliger, A.: Knotted 4k 1-spheres in 6k-space. Ann. of Math. 75, 452–466 (1962).
- O.16 Levine, J.: A classification of differentiable knots. Ann. of Math. 82, 15-50 (1965).
- O.17 Haefliger, A.: Differentiable embeddings of  $S^n$  in  $S^{n+q}$  for q > 2. Ann. of Math. 83, 402-436 (1966).
- O.18 Rourke, C. P., Sanderson, B. J.: Block bundles, III. Ann. of Math. 87, 431-483 (1968).

### P. Immersion theory

P.1 Haefliger, A., Poenaru, V.: La classification des immersions combinatoire. Publ. I.H.E.S. (Paris) 23, 75-91 (1964).

Differential case:

- P.2 Smale, S.: The classification of immersions of spheres in euclidean space. Ann. of Math. 69, 327-344 (1959).
- P.3 Hirsch, M.W.: Immersions of manifolds. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 93, 242-276 (1959).

### Q. Smoothing theory

- Q.1 Whitehead, J. H. C.: On C<sup>1</sup>-complexes. Ann. of Math. 41, 809-814 (1940).
- Q.2 Cairns, S.S.: A simple triangulation method for smooth manifolds. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 67, 389-390 (1961).
- Q.3 Munkres, J.: Obstructions to smoothing piecewise differentiable homeomorphisms. Ann. of Math. 72, 521-544 (1960).
- Q.4 Mazur, B., Hirsch, M. W.: Obstruction theories for smoothing manifolds and maps. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 69, 352-356 (1963).
- Q.5 Kervaire, M.A.: A manifold which does not admit any differentiable structure. Comm. Math. Helv. 34, 257-270 (1960).
   Kervaire and Milnor [N.3].
- Q.6 Lashof, R., Rothenberg, M.: Microbundles and smoothing. Topology 3, 357-388 (1965).

- Q.7 Haefliger, A.: Lissages des immersions, I. Topology 6, 221-240 (1967). Haefliger [O.14].
  - Rourke and Sanderson [L.1], Section 6.
- Q.8 Cerf, J.: La nullite de  $\pi_0$  (Diff S<sup>3</sup>). Seminar Cartan 1962/3, exp. 8, 9, 10, 21 and 22.
- Q.9 Rourke, C. P.: Structure theorems (to appear).
- R. Triangulation of topological manifolds and the hauptvermutung Dimension 3:
- R.1 Moise, E.E.: Affine structures on 3-manifolds. Ann. of Math. 54-59 (1951-1954).
- R.2 Bing, R.H.: An alternative proof that 3-manifolds can be triangulated. Ann. of Math. 69, 37-65 (1959).
  Dimension > 5.

Dimension  $\geq 5$ :

- R.3 Milnor, J.W.: Two complexes which are homeomorphic but combinatorially distinct. Ann. of Math. 74, 575-590 (1961).
- R.4 Kirby, R., Siebenmann, L.: On the triangulation of manifolds and the hauptvermutung. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. **75**, 742-749 (1969).
- R.5 Kirby, R.C.: Lectures on the triangulation of manifolds. U.C.L.A. (Los Angeles), 1969.

Rourke [Q.9].

- R.6 Siebenmann, L.C.: The disruption of low-dimensional handlebody theory by Rohlin's theorem. Topology of manifolds, Edit. by Cantrell and Edwards, p. 57-76. Chicago: Markham 1970.
- R.7 Rourke, C. P., Sanderson, B.J.: On topological neighbourhoods. Composito Math. 22, 387-424 (1970).

Homotopy hauptvermutung:

Casson [N.11].

- R.8 Sullivan, D.P.: On the hauptvermutung for manifolds. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 73, 598-600 (1967).
- R.9 Armstrong, M.A., Cooke, G.E., Rourke, C.P.: Princeton notes on the hauptvermutung (1968), available from Warwick Univ. (Coventry).
- S. Bordism and Cobordism

Differential case:

- S.1 Thom, R.: Quelques propriétés globales des variétés différentiables. Comm. Math. Helv. 28, 17-86 (1954).
- S.2 Wall, C.T.C.: Determination of the cobordism ring. Ann. of Math. 72, 292-311 (1960).
- S.3 Stong, R.E.: Notes of cobordism theory. Princeton U.P.
- S.4 Atiyah, M.F.: Bordism and cobordism. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc. 57, 200-208 (1961).

P.l. case:

- S.5 Williamson, R.E., Jr.: Cobordism of combinatorial manifolds. Ann. of Math. 83, 1-33 (1966).
- S.6 Browder, W., Luilevicious, A., Peterson, F. P.: Cobordism theories. Ann. of Math. 84, 91-101 (1966).
- S.7 Brumfiel, G., Milgram, J., Madsen, I.: Determination of unoriented p.l. cobordism (to appear).
   Bourke and Sanderson [14]

Rourke and Sanderson [J.4].

# Index

Abstract isomorphism 20 - polyhedron 26 - simplicial complex 26 Adding handles 80 -- lemma 80 Alexander trick 37 - duality 100 Ambient isotopy 37 Annulus theorem 36 Arc 1 Attaching sphere and tube of handle 74 - map of handle 74 — cells 101 Ball 8 - complex 27 -, joins of 23 -, pairs of 50 -, joins of pairs of 52 -, unknotting pairs of in codimension  $\geq 3$  91–92 - - - - in codimension 2 92 Barycentre of simplex 11 Based handle 89 Basepoint 100 Belt sphere and tube of handle 74 Bordism, bibliography 118 Boundary of cube 4 - of manifold 7 - of simplex 12 — of cell 13 - of cobordism 87 Cancelling handles 78 Cancellation lemma 78 Cell 13 - complex 14 — is a ball 21 -, convex 13, 27 - 30-, pairs of 51 in CW complex 101

Cellular map 16 - isomorphism 16 - collapse 104 - expansion 104 - moves 54-55, 65 Characteristic map for handle 74 --- for cell 101 Closed map 60 manifold 7 Cobordism 9 -, handles on 75 — with boundary 87 -, invertible 93 -, bibliography 118 Cocore of handle 74 Codimension 50 Coefficients 100 Cohen's simplicial neighbourhood theorem 34 - 35Cohomology 100 Collapse and collapsing 39 et seq. - for pairs 54 -, cellular 104 --, internal 105 -, polyhedral 105 -, collapsing and regular neighbourhoods 40 --, notes 109-110 Collar and collaring 24 -, local 24 - theorem 24 for pairs 52 collars as regular neighbourhoods 36 -, regular neighbourhood collaring theorem 36 Combinatorial annulus theorem 36 - manifold, notes 108 Complement, simplicial 32 Complementary handles 78 Complex, cell 14 -, simplicial 16

Complex, ball 27 -, dual 27 -, CW 101 Computing homology 102 Concordance of embeddings 96 Cone 2 - construction 5-6 - on p.l. map 6 - on complex 15 -, dual 27 - pair 48 Connected sum 46 Connectivity, simple and higher 101 Constructing h-cobordisms 90 Contractible 98 Convex set 13 - cells 13, 27-30 Coordinate neighbourhood 7 Core of handle 74 Critical dimension for linking 69 Cube 4 Cycle 98 CW complex 101 associated to a decomposition 83 -, subdivision of 105 Decomposition (handle) 81 -, symmetrical 82 -, nice 82 -, associated CW complex 83 -, simplifying 84 Deformation retract 98 Derived subdivision 20 -, near subcomplex 32 - neighbourhood 32 neighbourhood for pairs 52 Diagram of maps 18 Dimension 12 Disc 8 - theorem 44 - theorem for pairs 56 Dual cone 27 - complex 27, 84 Duality theorems 84, 100 Elimination of handles 85-86 Embedding in double dimension (Penrose-Whitehead-Zeeman theorem) 63 - in codimension  $\geq 3$  (Irwin's theorem) 96 -, notes 111 -, bibliography 113, 116 Engulfing 94

-, bibliography 114 Epsilon ( $\epsilon$ -) neighbourhood 32 - homotopy 60 - isotopy 60 Euclidean space 1 Exactness 97 Excision 98 Expansion (cellular) 104 Extending collars 57 External join 22-23 Face of cube 4 - of simplex 11 - of cell 14 Five dimensional theorems 93-94 Foundations, bibliography 112 Full subcomplex 31 Fundamental group 101 Geometric interpretation of homology 98 Geometric topology, notes 108 General position 60-63, 64 — theorem for embeddings 61 - - theorem for maps 61 - -, bibliography 113 Gluing 26 h-cobordism 9 - theorem 9 -, proof of theorem 87 -, relative theorem 87 -, classification 90 -, construction 90 -, weak five dimensional theorem 93 -, notes 109 Handle 74 et seq. -, terminology 74 - on cobordism 75 -, reordering 76 - of adjacent index 76 -, incidence number of 77 -, complementary 78 -, cancelling 78 -, introduction 79 -, adding 80 - decomposition 81 -, nice decomposition 82 -, eliminating 85-86 -, based 89 -, bibliography 114 Hauptvermutung, bibliography 118 Homeomorphism, p.1. 6 -, periodic 26

#### Index

Homogeneity of manifolds 44 Homology 97 - triviality of links 69-70 — linking number 72 -, geometric interpretation of 98 between cycles 99 - of sphere 99 -, computation of 102 -, bibliography 115 Homotopy 97 -, e - 60 - equivalence 98 - groups 100 -, simple 39, 107 House with two rooms 2, 40 -, notes 108 Immersion theory, bibliography 117 Independent set 11 - subsets 22 Index of handle 74 Induced orientation for boundary of manifold 45 Incidence number, of handle 77 — — of cell 102 -- in  $\mathbb{Z}\pi$  89, 103 Interior of manifold 7 - of cell 13 Internal collapse 105 Intersection number 68, 100  $- - in \mathbb{Z}\pi$  72 Introducing handles, introduction lemma 79 Invertible cobordism 93 Irwin's embedding theorem 96 Isomorphism, cellular 16 -, abstract 20 Isotopy 37 -, ambient 37 -, support of 37 uniqueness of regular neighbourhoods 38 - extension 56-59 -, locally trivial 58 - extension theorem 58 --. e- 60 -, notes 110 -, bibliography 113 Join I -, external 22-23 -, simplicial 23 - of balls and spheres 23

- of maps 23 of pairs of balls and spheres 51 -, bibliography 112 Lefschetz duality 84, 100 Level preserving 37 — — lemma 58 Levine's unknotting theorem 92 Linear map 1 subspace 1 — cell 13 - triangulation 18 Link 2 - of vertex in simplicial complex 20 — of simplex 23 - pair 48 of spheres 69 Linking number 72 Local collaring 24 - collaring for pairs 52 extension of collar 57 - triviality of isotopy 58 flatness 47, 50 Manifold 7 -, homogeneity 44 - pair 50, 51 - embedding theorems 63, 96 Map, linear 1 ---. p.l. 5 -, cellular 16 -, simplicial 16 Mapping cylinder 107 Morse function, notes 109 Naturality 97 Neighbourhood, simplicial 32 —. derived 32 —, ε- 32 -, regular 33 et seq. Newman's theorem (corollary 3.13) 35 \_ \_\_ notes 109 Nice handle decomposition 82 Non-degenerate map 61 Normal bundles, bibliography 115 Orientation of manifold 43 et seq. -, definition independent of algebraic topology 46 - induced on boundary 45 -, standard orientation for spheres and balls 45 -, oriented cycle 98

P.I. map 5 - homeomorphism 6 - invariant 6 embedding - manifold 7 -, notes 108 Pairs 50 et seq. Periodic homeomorphism 26 Piecewise-linear, see p.l. Piping 67 Poincaré conjecture 8 — theorem (dimension  $\geq 6$ ) 8 -, weak 5-dimensional theorem 94 - duality 84, 100 -, notes 108-109 -, bibliography 114 Polyhedral collapse 105 Polyhedron 2 -, examples 2 -, non-examples 2 -, abstract 26 -, pairs of 50 -, notes 108 Projection, radial 6 Proper manifold pair 50 Pseudo-radial projection 20-21 Radial projection 6 Realising abstract simplicial complexes 26 Reduction of collar 57 Regular neighbourhood 33 et seq. — — uniqueness theorem 33 - - in manifolds 34 - - collaring theorem 36 - -, isotopy uniqueness (regular neighbourhood theorem) 38 - -, collapsing criterion 41 - - for pairs 52 - - theorem for pairs 53 — —, notes 109 - -, bibliography 112 Relative h-cobordism theorem 87 Relative regular neighbourhoods 56 -- -- , notes 109 - - -, bibliography 112 Reordering handles and the reordering lemma 76 s-cobordism theorem 88 et seq. — —, notes 109 - -, bibliography 114 Schönflies conjecture 47, 50

-, weak theorem 47 —, notes 110 -, bibliography 113 Shelling 40 - for pairs 54 Sign of intersection 68 Simple connectivity 101 Simple homotopy, equivalence, type 39, 107 — —, bibliography 113 Simplex 11 -, vertex of 11 -, face of 11 --, boundary of 12 Simplicial complex 16 — map 16 - diagram 18 - join 23 -, abstract complex 26 - neighbourhood 32 -- complement 32 - collapsing, notes 109 Simplicial neighbourhood theorem 34-35 - - - for pairs 53 Singular set 60 - cycle 99 Singularity of cycle 98 Skeleton of complex 15 Smale's h-cobordism theorem, see h-cobordism theorem Smoothing theory, bibliography 117 Spanning of simplex 11 subspace 12 — of cell 13 Sphere 8 -, joins of 23 -, standard orientation of 45 -, pairs of 50 -, criterion for unknotting 55 -, unknotting 64, 91-92 -, link of 69 -, homology of 99 Standard mistake 6, 108 - orientations 45 - ball and sphere pairs 50 --- link 69 Star 2 in complex 15 --- pair 48 Starring, stellar subdivision, stellar moves 15 -, notes 109 Subcomplex 15

— full 31 Subdivision 15 -, stellar 15 of triangulation 18 - derived 20 - of CW complex 105 - lemmas 16, 17, 19, 31 - theorems 17, 18 (for trees) - counterexamples 19 Support of isotopy 37 Surgery, bibliography 116 Symmetrical handle decomposition 82 Torsion (Whitehead torsion) 40, 104-107 - and s-cobordism theorem 88 et seq. -, constructing h-cobordisms with given 90 -, geometric definition and properties 104 et seq. -, algebraic definition 106 -, connection with polyhedra 106 -, connection with homotopy equivalences 40, 107 -, bibliography 115 Trail 40 Transversality 61 -, bibliography 115 Tree 18 Triangulation 17 -, subdivision of 18

 of topological manifold, bibliography 118
 Underlying polyhedron to cell complex 14

Unit interval 4 Universal cover 102 coefficient theorem 100 Unknotted ball and sphere pairs 50 Unknotting theorems for balls and spheres in codimension  $\geq 3$  (Zeeman's theorem) 50, 52, 55, 64, 91-92 — — — — codimension 2 (Levine's theorem) 92 — —, notes 111 - -, bibliography 113, 116 Unlinking spheres 69, 70 Vertex of simplex 11 - of cell 14 Weak five dimensional theorems 93-94 Whitehead group of space 104 — — of group 106 Whitehead torsion, see torsion Whitehead's theorem 102 Whitney lemma 68, 69, 78 -- - non-simply-connected case 72 - - notes 110 Zeeman's theorem, see unknotting